

# CPC COOPERATIVE PATENT CLASSIFICATION

## H ELECTRICITY

(NOTE omitted)

## H04 ELECTRIC COMMUNICATION TECHNIQUE

(NOTE omitted)

## H04N PICTORIAL COMMUNICATION, e.g. TELEVISION

### NOTES

#### 1. This subclass covers :

- transmission of pictures or their transient or permanent reproduction either locally or remotely {and the corresponding electronic image capture and reproduction process employing image representative electric signals}, by methods involving both of {or at least one of} the following steps:
  - a. the {electronic acquisition or} scanning of a picture {or scene}, i.e. resolving the whole picture-containing area into individual picture-elements and the derivation of picture-representative electric signals related thereto, simultaneously or in sequence {, e.g. by reading an electronic solid-state image sensor [SSIS] pickup device, e.g. CCD or CMOS image sensor, as electronic image sensor converting optical image information into said electrical signals};
  - b. the reproduction of the whole picture-containing area {or scene} by the reproduction of individual picture -elements into which the picture is resolved by means of picture -representative electric signals derived therefrom, simultaneously or in sequence;
- in group [H04N 1/00](#), systems for the transmission or the reproduction of arbitrarily composed pictures or patterns in which the local light variations composing a picture are not subject to variation with time, e.g. documents, maps, charts, photographs other than cinematograph films;
- circuits specially designed for dealing with pictorial communication signals, e.g. television signals, as distinct from merely signals of a particular frequency range.

#### 2. This subclass does not cover :

- circuits or other parts of systems which form the subject of other subclasses, which are covered by the corresponding subclasses, e.g. [H03C](#), [H03F](#), [H03J](#), [H04B](#), [H04H](#);
- systems in which legible alphanumeric or like character forms are analysed according to step (a) of Note (1) to derive an electric signal from which the character is recognised by comparison with stored information, which are covered by subclass [G06K](#);
- systems for the direct photographic copying of an original picture in which an electric signal representative of the picture is derived according to the said step (a) and employed to modify the operation of the system, e.g. to control exposure, which are covered by class [G03](#);
- systems for the reproduction according to step (b) of Note (1) of pictures comprising alphanumeric or like character forms but involving the production of the equivalent of a signal which would be derived according to the above -mentioned step (a), e.g. by cams, punched card or tape, coded control signal, or other means, which are covered by the subclass for the application, e.g. [G01D](#), [G06T](#), [H04L](#);
- systems for the reproduction according to the above-mentioned step (b) of pictures comprising alphanumeric or like character forms and involving the generation according to the above -mentioned step (a) of picture-representative electric signals from a pre-arranged assembly of such characters, or records thereof, forming an integral part of the systems, which are covered by the subclass for the application, e.g. [B41B](#), [G06K](#), subject to those applications which are covered by this subclass;
- printing, duplication or marking processes , or materials or processes therefor, which are covered by the relevant subclasses, e.g. [B41C](#), [B41J](#), [B41M](#), [G03C](#), [G03F](#), [G03G](#);
- {apparatus or methods for taking photographs using light sensitive film for image capture, apparatus/methods for printing, for projecting or viewing images using film stock, photographic film or slides by optical means, e.g. mounting of optical elements, flashes, and their related controls, e.g. exposure, focus, (opto-)mechanical motion blur (anti-shake), cooling, beam shaping};
- {aspects of apparatus or methods for taking photographs using an electronic image sensor [EIS] for image capture, insofar as they correspond to those of said apparatus methods for taking photographs using light sensitive film, i.e. insofar as not peculiar to the presence of the EIS, e.g. mounting of optical elements or flashes not peculiar to the presence of the EIS, and their related controls insofar as they are not peculiar to the presence or use of the EIS, e.g. exposure, focus, (opto-)mechanical motion blur (anti-shake)};
- {aspects of apparatus or methods for projecting or viewing images using an electronic spatial light modulator [ESLM], insofar as they correspond to those of said apparatus/ methods for projecting or viewing images using film stock, photographic film or slides, i.e. insofar as not peculiar to the presence of the ESLM, e.g. mounting of optical elements not peculiar to the presence of the ESLM, and their related controls not peculiar to the presence of the ESLM, e.g. cooling, beam shaping, optical keystone correction};
- {(opto-)mechanical image enhancement in printers or projectors, e.g. keystone correction};
- {optical viewfinders};

- {remote control of cameras and projectors insofar not peculiar to the EIS or ESLM, e.g. not affecting their operation, or being based on a generated image signal;}
  - {optical aspects of camera modules using electronic image sensors and related constructional details (optical elements or arrangements associated with solid state imager structures [H01L 27/14625](#)); }
  - {constructional aspects of projectors, e.g. cooling, beam shaping, light integrating means not peculiar to the ESLM;}
3. In this subclass, the following expression is used with the meaning indicated:
- "television systems" means those systems for the {electronic generation,} transmission and reproduction of arbitrarily composed pictures in which the local light variations composing a picture may change with time, e.g. natural "live" scenes, {electronic} recordings of such scenes such as cinematograph films.
4. {In this subclass, as in subclass [G03B](#), the following terms are used with the meaning indicated:
- "camera": a device capturing image information represented by light patterns reflected or emitted from objects, and exposing a light sensitive film or a main electronic image sensor during a timed exposure, usually through a photographic lens, and producing an image on a light sensitive film or an electrical image information signal respectively;
  - "projector": a device displaying image information by projection of light patterns, usually through an optical lens, wherein the light patterns are generated by illuminating an image, e.g. film or slide, or by converting an electric image signal into an optical signal using an electronic spatial light modulator;
  - "electronic image sensor [EIS]": optoelectronic transducer, converting optical image information into an electrical signal susceptible of being processed, stored, transmitted or displayed;
  - "additional sensor": a sensor, other than the main electronic image sensor, used for controlling a camera;
  - "electronic spatial light modulator [ESLM]": optoelectronic transducer converting electric signals representing image information into optical image information.}

### **WARNINGS**

1. The following IPC groups are not in the CPC scheme. Subject matter for these IPC groups is classified in the following CPC groups:
- |                             |            |                            |
|-----------------------------|------------|----------------------------|
| <a href="#">H04N 5/761</a>  | covered by | <a href="#">H04N 5/782</a> |
| <a href="#">H04N 5/7613</a> | covered by | <a href="#">H04N 5/782</a> |
| <a href="#">H04N 5/7617</a> | covered by | <a href="#">H04N 5/782</a> |
| <a href="#">H04N 5/922</a>  | covered by | <a href="#">H04N 5/92</a>  |
| <a href="#">H04N 5/924</a>  | covered by | <a href="#">H04N 5/92</a>  |
| <a href="#">H04N 9/815</a>  | covered by | <a href="#">H04N 9/81</a>  |
2. In this subclass non-limiting references (in the sense of paragraph 39 of the Guide to the IPC) may still be displayed in the scheme.

<b>1/00</b>	<b>Scanning, transmission or reproduction of documents or the like, e.g. facsimile transmission; Details thereof</b>	1/00039 . . . {Analysis, i.e. separating and studying components of a greater whole}
1/00002	• {Diagnosis, testing or measuring; Detecting, analysing or monitoring not otherwise provided for (error detection, error correction or monitoring in digital computers or digital computer components <a href="#">G06F 11/00</a> )}	1/00042 . . . {Monitoring, i.e. observation ( <a href="#">H04N 1/00029</a> - <a href="#">H04N 1/00039</a> take precedence)}
1/00005	. . {relating to image data}	1/00045 . . . {using a reference pattern designed for the purpose, e.g. a test chart}
1/00007	. . {relating to particular apparatus or devices}	1/00047 . . . {using an image not specifically designed for the purpose}
1/0001	. . . {Transmission systems or arrangements}	1/0005 . . . {in service, i.e. during normal operation}
1/00013	. . . {Reading apparatus}	1/00053 . . . {out of service, i.e. outside of normal operation}
1/00015	. . . {Reproducing apparatus}	1/00055 . . . {automatically on a periodic basis}
1/00018	. . . {Scanning arrangements}	1/00058 . . . {using a separate apparatus}
1/00021	. . . {Picture signal circuits}	1/00061 . . . . {using a remote apparatus ( <a href="#">H04N 1/00066</a> takes precedence)}
1/00023	. . . {Colour systems}	1/00063 . . . {using at least a part of the apparatus itself, e.g. self-testing}
1/00026	. . {Methods therefor}	1/00066 . . . {using a program downloaded or received from another apparatus}
1/00029	. . . {Diagnosis, i.e. identifying a problem by comparison with a normal state}	1/00068 . . . {Calculating or estimating}
1/00031	. . . {Testing, i.e. determining the result of a trial ( <a href="#">H04N 1/00029</a> takes precedence; using test signals for transmission mode changing <a href="#">H04N 2201/33371</a> )}	1/00071 . . . {characterised by the action taken}
1/00034	. . . {Measuring, i.e. determining a quantity by comparison with a standard ( <a href="#">H04N 1/00031</a> takes precedence)}	1/00074 . . . {Indicating or reporting (details of user-machine interface <a href="#">H04N 1/0035</a> )}
1/00037	. . . {Detecting, i.e. determining the occurrence of a predetermined state ( <a href="#">H04N 1/00031</a> takes precedence)}	1/00076 . . . . {locally}
		1/00079 . . . . {remotely}

- 1/00082 . . . {Adjusting or controlling ([interrupting an operation H04N 1/00915](#); [inhibiting an operation H04N 1/00925](#))}
- 1/00084 . . . . {Recovery or repair, e.g. self-repair}
- 1/00087 . . . . {Setting or calibrating ([picture signal circuits H04N 1/40](#))}
- 1/0009 . . . . {Storage}
- 1/00092 . . {relating to the original or to the reproducing medium, e.g. imperfections or dirt ([detecting properties of a sheet H04N 1/00681](#))}
- 1/00095 . {Systems or arrangements for the transmission of the picture signal}
- 1/00098 . . {via a television channel, e.g. for a series of still pictures with or without sound}
- 1/001 . . {specially adapted for transmission via digital wireline networks ([H04N 1/00098 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/00103 . . {specially adapted for radio transmission, e.g. via satellites ([H04N 1/00098 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/00106 . . . {using land mobile radio networks, e.g. mobile telephone}
- 1/00108 . . . . {of digital signals}
- 1/00111 . . {specially adapted for optical transmission}
- 1/00114 . . {with transmission of additional information signals ([for control or supervision between transmitter and receiver H04N 1/32101](#))}
- 1/00116 . . . . {of multimedia information}
- 1/00119 . . . . {of sound information only}
- 1/00122 . . . . {of text or character information only}
- 1/00124 . . . . {of video information only}
- 1/00127 . {Connection or combination of a still picture apparatus with another apparatus, e.g. for storage, processing or transmission of still picture signals or of information associated with a still picture}
- 1/00129 . . {with a display device, e.g. CRT or LCD monitor ([with a television apparatus H04N 1/00283](#); [arrangements for control of display devices G09G](#))}
- 1/00132 . . {in a digital photofinishing system, i.e. a system where digital photographic images undergo typical photofinishing processing, e.g. printing ordering}
- 1/00135 . . . . {Scanning of a photographic original}
- 1/00137 . . . . {Transmission}
- 1/0014 . . . . {via e-mail}
- 1/00143 . . . . {Ordering}
- 1/00145 . . . . {from a remote location}
- 1/00148 . . . . {Storage ([information retrieval G06F 16/00](#))}
- 1/00151 . . . . {with selective access}
- 1/00153 . . . . . {for sharing images with a selected individual or correspondent}
- 1/00156 . . . . . {with a group of selected individuals or correspondents}
- 1/00159 . . . . {for sharing images without access restriction, e.g. publishing images}
- 1/00161 . . . . {Viewing or previewing}
- 1/00164 . . . . {at a remote location}
- 1/00167 . . . {Processing or editing ([H04N 1/00196 - H04N 1/00201 take precedence](#))}
- 1/00169 . . . . {Digital image input}
- 1/00172 . . . . {directly from a still digital camera or from a storage medium mounted in a still digital camera ([H04N 1/0018 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/00175 . . . . {from a still image storage medium ([H04N 1/00172](#), [H04N 1/0018 take precedence](#))}
- 1/00177 . . . . {from a user terminal, e.g. personal computer}
- 1/0018 . . . . {of images captured using a loaned, rented or limited-use still digital camera, e.g. recyclable or disposable camera}
- 1/00183 . . . . {Photography assistance, e.g. displaying suggestions to the user}
- 1/00185 . . . . {Image output ([for details of particular output arrangements see the relevant sub-class, e.g. B41J, G03B, G09G, G11B](#))}
- 1/00188 . . . . {Printing, e.g. prints or reprints ([H04N 1/0019](#), [H04N 1/00196 take precedence](#))}
- 1/0019 . . . . {on souvenir-type products or the like, e.g. T-shirts or mugs}
- 1/00193 . . . . {to a portable storage medium, e.g. a read-writable compact disk}
- 1/00196 . . . . {Creation of a photo-montage, e.g. photoalbum ([H04N 1/0019 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/00198 . . . . {Creation of a soft photo presentation, e.g. digital slide-show}
- 1/00201 . . . . {Creation of a lenticular or stereo hardcopy image}
- 1/00204 . . {with a digital computer or a digital computer system, e.g. an internet server ([programmed control between transmitter and receiver or between image input and image output device H04N 1/32561](#))}
- 1/00206 . . . . {Transmitting or receiving computer data via an image communication device, e.g. a facsimile transceiver ([H04N 1/00236 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/00209 . . . . {Transmitting or receiving image data, e.g. facsimile data, via a computer, e.g. using e-mail, a computer network, the internet, I-fax}
- 1/00212 . . . . {Attaching image data to computer messages, e.g. to e-mails}
- 1/00214 . . . . {details of transmission}
- 1/00217 . . . . . {only involving computer data transmission protocols, e.g. SMTP, WAP or HTTP ([communication protocol aspects and techniques in packet data networks H04L 69/00](#); [network-specific arrangements or communication protocols supporting networked applications H04L 67/00](#))}
- 1/0022 . . . . . {involving facsimile protocols or a combination of facsimile protocols and computer data transmission protocols}
- 1/00222 . . . . . {details of image data generation or reproduction, e.g. scan-to-email or network printing}
- 1/00225 . . . . . {details of image data generation, e.g. scan-to-email or network scanners ([using an image reading device as a local input to a computer H04N 1/00241](#))}
- 1/00228 . . . . . {Image push arrangements, e.g. from an image reading device to a specific network destination ([push-based network services H04L 67/55](#))}

- 1/0023 . . . . {Image pull arrangements, e.g. to a multifunctional peripheral from a networked computer}
- 1/00233 . . . . {details of image data reproduction, e.g. network printing or remote image display (using an image reproducing device as a local output from a computer [H04N 1/00238](#); digital output from computer to printer unit [G06F 3/12](#))}
- 1/00236 . . . {using an image reading or reproducing device, e.g. a facsimile reader or printer, as a local input to or local output from a computer (image input to or image output from a computer via a network [H04N 1/00209](#))}
- 1/00238 . . . . {using an image reproducing device as a local output from a computer (output via network, e.g. network printing [H04N 1/00233](#))}
- 1/00241 . . . . {using an image reading device as a local input to a computer (input via network, e.g. network scanners [H04N 1/00225](#))}
- 1/00244 . . . {with a server, e.g. an internet server (fax-servers or the like for store and forward [H04N 1/324](#))}
- 1/00246 . . {with an optical device, e.g. an optical viewing aid}
- 1/00249 . . {with a photographic apparatus, e.g. a photographic printer or a projector (photographic apparatus per se [G03B](#), [G03D](#))}
- 1/00251 . . . {with an apparatus for taking photographic images, e.g. a camera}
- 1/00254 . . . {with an electrophotographic copying machine, i.e. a photocopier}
- 1/00257 . . . {with an electro-developing recording medium, e.g. generating image signals by reading such a medium in a still camera}
- 1/00259 . . . {with an apparatus for processing exposed photographic materials}
- 1/00262 . . . . {Reading a film during its processing, e.g. generating image signals from a film while the photographic image on the film is in the process of being developed}
- 1/00265 . . . {with a photographic printing apparatus}
- 1/00267 . . . {with a viewing or projecting apparatus, e.g. for reading image information from a film ([H04N 1/00262](#) takes precedence)}
- 1/0027 . . . {Reading or writing of non-image information from or to a photographic material, e.g. processing data stored in a magnetic track}
- 1/00273 . . . {with apparatus for handling photographic material}
- 1/00275 . . . {Recording image information on a photographic material}
- 1/00278 . . {with a printing apparatus, e.g. a laser beam printer}
- 1/00281 . . {with a telecommunication apparatus, e.g. a switched network of teleprinters for the distribution of text-based information, a selective call terminal (details of transmission [H04N 1/00095](#); establishing a communication with one of a facsimile machine or another apparatus sharing a single line [H04N 1/32704](#); interfacing cordless telephone terminals with an accessory to increase the functionality of user interface [H04M 1/72409](#))}
- 1/00283 . . . {with a television apparatus}
- 1/00286 . . . . {with studio circuitry, devices or equipment, e.g. television cameras (television studio circuitry, devices or equipment per se [H04N 5/222](#))}
- 1/00289 . . . . {in a video photo booth or the like}
- 1/00291 . . . . {with receiver circuitry (television receiver circuitry per se [H04N 5/44](#))}
- 1/00294 . . . . {for printing images at a television receiver}
- 1/00297 . . . . {with a television signal recorder, e.g. for recording facsimile images on a VCR (motion video recording combined with still video recording in a still video camera [H04N 1/212](#))}
- 1/00299 . . . . {with a television transmission apparatus, e.g. a videophone, a teletext system or a digital television system}
- 1/00302 . . . {with a telephonic apparatus, e.g. telephone answering machine or videotex terminal ([H04N 1/00307](#) takes precedence; telephonic communication [H04M](#))}
- 1/00305 . . . . {with a cordless telephone apparatus}
- 1/00307 . . . {with a mobile telephone apparatus (constructional features of portable telephone sets [H04M 1/0202](#); mobile radio systems [H04W 84/00](#))}
- 1/0031 . . . {with a selective call apparatus, e.g. a paging device (selective call receivers [H04W 88/022](#); selective call encoders [H04W 88/185](#))}
- 1/00312 . . . {with a digital transmission apparatus, e.g. a switched network of teleprinters for the distribution of text-based information, SMS or ISDN device (transmitting or receiving via a computer, e.g. using e-mail, a computer network or the internet [H04N 1/00214](#); transmission of digital information [H04L](#))}
- 1/00315 . . . {with a radio transmission apparatus (with a cordless telephone [H04N 1/00305](#); systems or arrangements for the transmission of a picture signal specially adapted for transmission via radio [H04N 1/00103](#); [H04N 1/00307](#) takes precedence; radio transmission systems [H04B 7/00](#); wireless communication networks [H04W](#))}
- 1/00318 . . . {with a multi-media apparatus}
- 1/0032 . . {with a medium handling apparatus, e.g. a sheet sorter (handling thin or filamentary material, e.g. sheets [B65H](#))}
- 1/00323 . . {with a measuring, monitoring or signaling apparatus, e.g. for transmitting measured information to a central location}
- 1/00326 . . {with a data reading, recognizing or recording apparatus, e.g. with a bar-code apparatus (arrangements for the associated working of recording or reproducing apparatus with related apparatus [G11B 31/00](#))}
- 1/00328 . . . {with an apparatus processing optically-read information}
- 1/00331 . . . . {with an apparatus performing optical character recognition (character recognition [G06V 30/10](#))}
- 1/00334 . . . . {with an apparatus processing barcodes or the like (arrangements for sensing record carriers [G06K 7/00](#))}



- 1/00336 . . . . {with an apparatus performing pattern recognition, e.g. of a face or a geographic feature ([image or video recognition or understanding of scenes G06V 20/00](#))}
- 1/00339 . . . . {with an electronic or magnetic storage medium I/O device ([RFID or the like H04N 1/00342](#))}
- 1/00342 . . . . {with a radio frequency tag transmitter or receiver ([storage of additional information in an RFID tag attached to an image bearing paper sheet H04N 1/32138](#))}
- 1/00344 . . {with a management, maintenance, service or repair apparatus ([monitoring H04N 1/00002](#))}
- 1/00347 . . {with another still picture apparatus, e.g. hybrid still picture apparatus ([circuits or arrangements for control or supervision between image input and image output device H04N 1/32](#))}
- 1/0035 . {User-machine interface; Control console ([input or output arrangements for computers G06F 3/00](#))}
- 1/00352 . . {Input means ([H04N 1/00411 takes precedence; input arrangements for computers G06F 3/00](#))}
- 1/00355 . . . {Mark-sheet input ([sensing record carriers G06K 7/00; character recognition G06V 30/10; document-oriented image-based pattern recognition G06V 30/40](#))}
- 1/00358 . . . . {Type of the scanned marks}
- 1/0036 . . . . . {Alphanumeric symbols}
- 1/00363 . . . . . {Bar codes or the like}
- 1/00366 . . . . . {Marks in boxes or the like, e.g. crosses or blacking out ([H04N 1/0036 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/00368 . . . . {Location of the scanned marks}
- 1/00371 . . . . . {on a separate sheet}
- 1/00374 . . . . . {on the same page as at least a part of the image}
- 1/00376 . . . . {Means for identifying a mark sheet or area}
- 1/00379 . . . . {Means for enabling correct scanning of a mark sheet or area, e.g. registration or timing marks}
- 1/00381 . . . {Input by recognition or interpretation of visible user gestures ([manual input means, e.g. digitisers, writing tablets H04N 1/00392; gesture input to computers G06F 3/017; recognition algorithms G06V 40/20](#))}
- 1/00384 . . . {Key input means, e.g. buttons or keypads ([electromechanical details of key input means in general H01H 13/00](#))}
- 1/00387 . . . . {Multiple functions per key}
- 1/00389 . . . . {Programmable function keys, e.g. for one-touch operation ([H04N 1/00387 takes precedence; for automation of transmitter jobs H04N 1/32058](#))}
- 1/00392 . . . {Other manual input means, e.g. digitisers or writing tablets}
- 1/00395 . . . {Arrangements for reducing operator input ([input arrangements for job or mode instructions or parameters H04N 1/00962; intelligent menu interfaces H04N 1/00437](#))}
- 1/00397 . . . {Switches, knobs or the like}
- 1/004 . . . . {Rocker or tumbler switches}
- 1/00403 . . . {Voice input means, e.g. voice commands}
- 1/00405 . . {Output means ([output arrangements for computers G06F 3/00](#))}
- 1/00408 . . . {Display of information to the user, e.g. menus}
- 1/00411 . . . . {the display also being used for user input, e.g. touch screen}
- 1/00413 . . . . {using menus, i.e. presenting the user with a plurality of selectable options ([H04N 1/00464 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/00416 . . . . . {Multi-level menus}
- 1/00419 . . . . . {Arrangements for navigating between pages or parts of the menu}
- 1/00421 . . . . . {using drop-down menus}
- 1/00424 . . . . . {using a list of graphical elements, e.g. icons or icon bar}
- 1/00427 . . . . . {using a menu list ([H04N 1/00421, H04N 1/00424, H04N 1/00429 take precedence](#))}
- 1/00429 . . . . . {using a navigation tree}
- 1/00432 . . . . . {using tabs}
- 1/00435 . . . . . {arranged in a predetermined sequence, e.g. using next and previous buttons}
- 1/00437 . . . . . {Intelligent menus, e.g. anticipating user selections}
- 1/0044 . . . . {for image preview or review, e.g. to help the user position a sheet}
- 1/00442 . . . . . {Simultaneous viewing of a plurality of images, e.g. using a mosaic display arrangement of thumbnails}
- 1/00445 . . . . . {arranged in a one dimensional array}
- 1/00448 . . . . . {horizontally}
- 1/0045 . . . . . {vertically}
- 1/00453 . . . . . {arranged in a two dimensional array}
- 1/00456 . . . . . {for layout preview, e.g. page layout}
- 1/00458 . . . . . {Sequential viewing of a plurality of images, e.g. browsing or scrolling}
- 1/00461 . . . . . {marking or otherwise tagging one or more displayed image, e.g. for selective reproduction}
- 1/00464 . . . . {using browsers, i.e. interfaces based on mark-up languages}
- 1/00466 . . . . {displaying finishing information, e.g. position of punch holes or staple or orientation references}
- 1/00469 . . . . {with enlargement of a selected area of the displayed information}
- 1/00472 . . . . {using a pop-up window}
- 1/00474 . . . {outputting a plurality of functional options, e.g. scan, copy or print}
- 1/00477 . . . {Indicating status, e.g. of a job ([for control or supervision between transmitter and receiver or between image input and image output device H04N 2201/3219](#))}
- 1/0048 . . . {Indicating an illegal or impossible operation or selection to the user}
- 1/00482 . . . {outputting a plurality of job set-up options, e.g. number of copies, paper size or resolution}
- 1/00485 . . . {providing a hardcopy output to the user, e.g. print out}
- 1/00488 . . . {providing an audible output to the user}
- 1/0049 . . . {providing a visual indication to the user, e.g. using a lamp ([H04N 1/00408 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/00493 . . {Particular location of the interface or console}

- 1/00496 . . {Constructional details of the interface or console not otherwise provided for, e.g. rotating or tilting means}
- 1/00498 . . {Multi-lingual facilities}
- 1/00501 . . {Tailoring a user interface [UI] to specific requirements}
- 1/00503 . . . {Customising to a particular machine or model, machine function or application}
- 1/00506 . . . {Customising to the data to be displayed}
- 1/00509 . . . {Personalising for a particular user or group of users, e.g. a workgroup or company}
- 1/00511 . . . . {for a group of users, e.g. a workgroup, company, or a service provider}
- 1/00514 . . . . {for individual users}
- 1/00517 . . . . {involving favourite or frequently used settings}
- 1/00519 . {Constructional details not otherwise provided for, e.g. housings, covers}
- 1/00522 . . {Reducing apparatus footprint, e.g. wall-mounted or vertically arranged apparatus}
- 1/00525 . . {Providing a more compact apparatus, e.g. sheet discharge tray in cover}
- 1/00527 . . . {Discharge tray at least partially sandwiched between image generating and reproducing components}
- 1/0053 . . . {Discharge tray in cover}
- 1/00533 . . . {using slidably mounted components, e.g. reader in drawer}
- 1/00535 . . . {using rotatably mounted or foldable components}
- 1/00538 . . {Modular devices, i.e. allowing combinations of separate components, removal or replacement of components}
- 1/00541 . . . {with detachable image reading apparatus}
- 1/00543 . . {Allowing easy access, e.g. for maintenance or in case of paper jam ([H04N 1/00538 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/00546 . . . {using a side opening}
- 1/00549 . . {Counter-measures for mechanical vibration not otherwise provided for}
- 1/00551 . . {Top covers or the like}
- 1/00554 . . . {Latches or hinges therefor}
- 1/00557 . . {Connection or assembly of components or elements ([H04N 1/00538 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/00559 . . {Mounting or support of components or elements ([H04N 1/00538 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/00562 . . {Supporting the apparatus as a whole, e.g. stands}
- 1/00564 . . {Constructional details relating to ergonomic aspects}
- 1/00567 . {Handling of original or reproduction media, e.g. cutting, separating, stacking}
- 1/0057 . . {Conveying sheets before or after scanning (arrangements for conveying sheets as part of the scanning operation [H04N 1/04](#) and subgroups)}
- 1/00572 . . . {with refeeding for double-sided scanning, e.g. using one scanning head for both sides of a sheet}
- 1/00575 . . . . {Inverting the sheet prior to refeeding}
- 1/00578 . . . . . {using at least part of a loop, e.g. using a return loop}
- 1/0058 . . . . . {using at least one dead-end path, e.g. using a sheet ejection path}
- 1/00583 . . . . . {by rotating the sheet about an axis lying in its plane}
- 1/00586 . . . . {Inverting the scanning elements with respect to the scanning plane prior to refeeding}
- 1/00588 . . . . {to the scanning position ([H04N 1/00572](#), [H04N 1/00594 take precedence](#))}
- 1/00591 . . . . {from the scanning position ([H04N 1/00572 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/00594 . . . . . {along at least a part of the same path as transport to the scanning position ([H04N 1/00575 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/00596 . . . . {using at least a part of the apparatus in common for transporting to or from a plurality of scanning positions, e.g. for reading and printing}
- 1/00599 . . . . {Using specific components ([details of components related to handling thin or filamentary material B65H](#))}
- 1/00602 . . . . . {Feed rollers}
- 1/00604 . . . . . {Transport trays}
- 1/00607 . . . . . {Grippers or the like, e.g. suction grippers}
- 1/0061 . . . . . {Feed belts}
- 1/00612 . . . . . {Path switches ([H04N 1/00575](#), [H04N 1/00623](#), [H04N 1/00633 take precedence](#))}
- 1/00615 . . . . . {Guiding elements, e.g. plates}
- 1/00618 . . . . {Transporting curved sheets or curving sheets during transportation, e.g. for feeding to a drum-type scanner}
- 1/0062 . . . {Removing sheets from a stack or inputting media}
- 1/00623 . . . . {Selectively inputting media from one of a plurality of input sources, e.g. input trays}
- 1/00625 . . . . {Removing sheets selectively from the top or bottom of a single stack or tray}
- 1/00628 . . . {Separating, e.g. preventing feeding of two sheets at a time}
- 1/00631 . . . . {Ejecting or stacking ([H04N 1/00641 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/00633 . . . . {selectively to one of a plurality of output trays ([H04N 1/00641 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/00636 . . . . {Ejecting sheets selectively to the top or bottom of a single stack or tray}
- 1/00639 . . . {Binding, stapling, folding or perforating, e.g. punching}
- 1/00641 . . . {Sorting, reordering or inverting ([postal sorting or sorting individual articles B07C](#))}
- 1/00644 . . . {Counting or calculating, e.g. a number of remaining sheets}
- 1/00647 . . . {Decurling}
- 1/00649 . . . {Control or synchronising different handling operations ([H04N 1/00657 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/00652 . . . . {Control of feeding speed, e.g. fast feeding to scanning position ([H04N 1/00673 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/00655 . . . {Apparatus in common for different handling operations ([H04N 1/00575](#), [H04N 1/00594](#), [H04N 1/00596](#), [H04N 1/00618 take precedence](#))}
- 1/00657 . . . {Compensating for different handling speeds of different apparatus or arrangements for handling a plurality of sheets simultaneously, e.g. mechanical buffering}
- 1/0066 . . . {Aligning or positioning related to handling}
- 1/00663 . . . {Indicating relating to handling of media}

- 1/00665 . . . {Details specific to handling of web-shaped media, e.g. paper or film rolls}
- 1/00668 . . . {Removing the medium from a cassette, spindle or the like}
- 1/00671 . . . {Winding or feeding the medium into a cassette or onto a spindle or the like}
- 1/00673 . . . {Controlling the amount of slack or tension control}
- 1/00676 . . . {Cutting}
- 1/00679 . . . . {after scanning}
- 1/00681 . {Detecting the presence, position or size of a sheet or correcting its position before scanning ([H04N 1/047](#) takes precedence; mode signalling [H04N 1/333](#); skew detection or correction in image signals [H04N 1/3878](#))}
- 1/00684 . . . {Object of the detection}
- 1/00687 . . . {Presence or absence}
- 1/00689 . . . . {Presence}
- 1/00692 . . . . {Absence}
- 1/00694 . . . . {in an input tray}
- 1/00697 . . . . {in an output tray}
- 1/007 . . . . {of holder, e.g. film mount}
- 1/00702 . . . {Position}
- 1/00705 . . . . {at a plurality of spaced apart locations, e.g. as a sheet is fed through the apparatus}
- 1/00708 . . . {Size or dimensions}
- 1/0071 . . . . {Width}
- 1/00713 . . . . {Length}
- 1/00716 . . . . {Thickness}
- 1/00718 . . . {Skew}
- 1/00721 . . . {Orientation}
- 1/00724 . . . {Type of sheet, e.g. colour of paper or transparency}
- 1/00726 . . . {Other properties of the sheet, e.g. curvature or reflectivity}
- 1/00729 . . . {Detection means}
- 1/00732 . . . {Mechanical detectors}
- 1/00734 . . . {Optical detectors}
- 1/00737 . . . . {using the scanning elements as detectors}
- 1/0074 . . . . . {using inactive scanning elements, e.g. elements outside the scanning area}
- 1/00742 . . . {Detection methods}
- 1/00745 . . . {Detecting the leading or trailing ends of a moving sheet}
- 1/00748 . . . {Detecting edges, e.g. of a stationary sheet}
- 1/0075 . . . {Detecting a change in reflectivity}
- 1/00753 . . . . {of a sheet relative to a particular background}
- 1/00755 . . . {Detecting an interruption of light}
- 1/00758 . . . {using a prescan}
- 1/00761 . . . {using reference marks, e.g. on sheet, sheet holder or guide}
- 1/00763 . . . {Action taken as a result of detection}
- 1/00766 . . . {Storing data}
- 1/00769 . . . {Comparing, e.g. with threshold}
- 1/00771 . . . {Indicating or reporting, e.g. issuing an alarm}
- 1/00774 . . . {Adjusting or controlling}
- 1/00777 . . . . {Inhibiting, e.g. an operation}
- 1/00779 . . . . {Adjusting settings, e.g. mode, feeding rate or type of paper}
- 1/00782 . . . . {Initiating operations}
- 1/00785 . . . {Correcting the position of a sheet before scanning}
- 1/00787 . . . . {using mechanical means}
- 1/0079 . . . . {using guide or holder}
- 1/00793 . . . . {using paper feeding mechanism, e.g. operate drive rollers at different speeds}
- 1/00795 . {Reading arrangements ([details of scanning heads H04N 1/024](#); scanning arrangements therefor [H04N 1/04](#))}
- 1/00798 . . . {Circuits or arrangements for the control thereof, e.g. using a programmed control device or according to a measured quantity}
- 1/00801 . . . . {according to characteristics of the original}
- 1/00803 . . . . . {Presence or absence of information}
- 1/00806 . . . . . {According to type of the original, e.g. colour paper or transparency, or reading a plurality of different types of original}
- 1/00809 . . . . . {Orientation}
- 1/00811 . . . . {according to user specified instructions, e.g. user selection of reading mode}
- 1/00814 . . . . {according to a detected condition or state of the reading apparatus, e.g. temperature}
- 1/00816 . . . . {Determining the reading area, e.g. eliminating reading of margins}
- 1/00819 . . . . {Self-calibrating reading means}
- 1/00822 . . . . {Selecting or setting a particular reading mode, e.g. from amongst a plurality of modes, simplex or duplex, or high or low resolution}
- 1/00824 . . . . {for displaying or indicating, e.g. a condition or state ([details of displaying or indicating means H04N 1/00405](#))}
- 1/00827 . . . {Arrangements for reading an image from an unusual original, e.g. 3-dimensional objects}
- 1/0083 . {Arrangements for transferring signals between different components of the apparatus, e.g. arrangements of signal lines or cables ([for control or supervision between image input and output device H04N 1/32](#))}
- 1/00832 . {Recording use, e.g. counting number of pages copied}
- 1/00835 . {Detecting external or ambient light}
- 1/00838 . {Preventing unauthorised reproduction}
- 1/0084 . . . {Determining the necessity for prevention}
- 1/00843 . . . . {based on recognising a copy prohibited original, e.g. a banknote ([pattern authentication and markers therefor, forgery detection G06V 20/95](#); character recognition [G06V 30/10](#); document-oriented image-based pattern recognition [G06V 30/40](#); testing paper currency or similar valuable papers for genuineness [G07D 7/00](#))}
- 1/00846 . . . . . {based on detection of a dedicated indication, e.g. marks or the like}
- 1/00848 . . . . . {by detecting a particular original}
- 1/00851 . . . . . {externally to or remotely from the reproduction apparatus, e.g. using a connected apparatus}
- 1/00854 . . . . {Recognising an unauthorised user or user-associated action}
- 1/00856 . . . {Preventive measures}
- 1/00859 . . . . {Issuing an alarm or the like}
- 1/00862 . . . . {Retaining the original}
- 1/00864 . . . . {Modifying the reproduction, e.g. outputting a modified copy of a scanned original ([details of composing or otherwise geometrically modifying originals H04N 1/387](#))}

- 1/00867 . . . . {with additional data, e.g. by adding a warning message (details of embedding additional information in an image [H04N 1/32144](#))}
- 1/0087 . . . . {with hidden additional data, e.g. data invisible to the human eye}
- 1/00872 . . . . {by image quality reduction, e.g. distortion or blacking out}
- 1/00875 . . . {Inhibiting reproduction, e.g. by disabling reading or reproduction apparatus}
- 1/00877 . . . {Recording information, e.g. details of the job}
- 1/0088 . . {Detecting or preventing tampering attacks on the reproduction system}
- 1/00883 . . {Auto-copy-preventive originals, i.e. originals that are designed not to allow faithful reproduction}
- 1/00885 . {Power supply means, e.g. arrangements for the control of power supply to the apparatus or components thereof}
- 1/00888 . . {Control thereof}
- 1/00891 . . . {Switching on or off, e.g. for saving power when not in use ([H04N 1/00896](#) takes precedence)}
- 1/00893 . . . {using a back-up supply, e.g. in case of main-supply failure}
- 1/00896 . . . {using a low-power mode, e.g. standby}
- 1/00899 . . {Detection of supply level or supply failure}
- 1/00901 . . {Using different supplies or connection to an external supply ([H04N 1/00893](#), [H04N 1/00896](#) take precedence)}
- 1/00904 . . {Arrangements for supplying power to different circuits or for supplying power at different levels ([H04N 1/00896](#) takes precedence)}
- 1/00907 . . {Details of supply connection, e.g. arrangement of power cables ([H04N 1/00901](#) and [H04N 1/00904](#) take precedence)}
- 1/00909 . {Cleaning arrangements or preventing or counter-acting contamination from dust or the like ([cleaning in general](#), [prevention of fouling in general B08B](#))}
- 1/00912 . {Arrangements for controlling a still picture apparatus or components thereof not otherwise provided for}
- 1/00915 . . {Assigning priority to, or interrupting, a particular operation}
- 1/00917 . . . {Resuming after an intentional interruption, e.g. resetting parameters}
- 1/0092 . . . {Assigning priority according to size job or task, e.g. small jobs first}
- 1/00923 . . . {Variably assigning priority ([H04N 1/0092](#) takes precedence)}
- 1/00925 . . {Inhibiting an operation}
- 1/00928 . . {Initialisation or control of normal start-up or shut-down, i.e. non failure or error related}
- 1/00931 . . {Synchronising different operations or sub-apparatus, e.g. controlling on-times taking into account different warm-up times}
- 1/00933 . . {Timing control or synchronising ([H04N 1/00928](#), [H04N 1/00931](#), [H04N 1/00954](#) and [H04N 1/0096](#) take precedence)}
- 1/00936 . . {Skipping a function or process step}
- 1/00938 . . {Software related arrangements, e.g. loading applications ([program loading in general G06F 9/445](#))}
- 1/00941 . . . {Interaction of different applications ([H04N 1/00949](#) takes precedence; multiprogramming arrangements of computers [G06F 9/46](#))}
- 1/00944 . . . {using hot folders, i.e. folders or directories which trigger an action when written to or accessed}
- 1/00946 . . . . {Details of actions associated with a hot folder}
- 1/00949 . . . {Combining applications, e.g. to create workflows (allocation of computer machine resources considering the execution order of a plurality of tasks [G06F 9/5038](#))}
- 1/00952 . . {Using a plurality of control devices, e.g. for different functions}
- 1/00954 . . {Scheduling operations or managing resources ([H04N 1/0096](#) takes precedence; program initiating or switching [G06F 9/48](#); allocation of computer resources [G06F 9/50](#))}
- 1/00957 . . {Compiling jobs, e.g. for batch processing ([H04N 1/3208](#) takes precedence; program code compilation [G06F 8/41](#))}
- 1/0096 . . {Simultaneous or quasi-simultaneous functioning of a plurality of operations ([H04N 1/32545](#) takes precedence; multiprogramming arrangements of computers [G06F 9/46](#))}
- 1/00962 . {Input arrangements for operating instructions or parameters, e.g. updating internal software ([program loading in general G06F 9/445](#); network-specific protocols involving the movement of software or configuration parameters [H04L 67/34](#))}
- 1/00965 . . {using a plug-in memory module, e.g. memory card, memory stick}
- 1/00968 . . {by scanning marks on a sheet ([mark-sheet input means H04N 1/00355](#); sensing record carriers [G06K 7/00](#))}
- 1/0097 . . {Storage of instructions or parameters, e.g. customised instructions or different parameters for different user IDs}
- 1/00973 . . {from a remote device, e.g. receiving via the internet instructions input to a computer terminal}
- 1/00976 . {Arrangements for regulating environment, e.g. removing static electricity}
- 1/00978 . . {Temperature control}
- 1/00981 . . . {by forced convection, e.g. using fans}
- 1/00984 . . . . {using fins or the like}
- 1/00986 . . . {Heating}
- 1/00989 . . . {by natural convection, e.g. using fins without a fan}
- 1/00992 . . {Humidity control, e.g. removing condensation}
- 1/00994 . . {Compensating for electric noise, e.g. electromagnetic interference}
- 1/00997 . . {Light control, e.g. shielding from ambient light or preventing light leakage}
- 1/024 . Details of scanning heads {; Means for illuminating the original}
- 1/02409 . . {Focusing, i.e. adjusting the focus of the scanning head}
- 1/02418 . . {for picture information pick up and reproduction}
- 1/02427 . . . {in different planes}
- 1/02436 . . . . {using a single head selectively and alternately arranged to scan in the different planes}



- 1/02445 . . . {in the same plane}
- 1/02454 . . . {using interchangeable heads}
- 1/02463 . . . {using heads mounted on the same support or substrate}
- 1/02472 . . . {using a single head, i.e. for pick up and reproduction ([H04N 1/02436 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/02481 . . {Arrangements for positioning elements within a head ([H04N 1/02409 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/0249 . . {Arrangements for mounting or supporting elements within a scanning head ([H04N 1/02481 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/028 . . for picture information pick-up
- 1/02805 . . . {with photodetectors arranged in a two-dimensional array}
- 1/0281 . . . {with means for collecting light from a line or an area of the original and for guiding it to only one or a relatively low number of picture element detectors}
- 1/02815 . . . {Means for illuminating the original, not specific to a particular type of pick-up head}
- 1/0282 . . . . {Using a single or a few point light sources, e.g. a laser diode}
- 1/02825 . . . . {in combination with at least one reflector which is fixed in relation to the light source ([H04N 1/02835 and H04N 1/0284 take precedence](#))}
- 1/0283 . . . . {in combination with a light deflecting element, e.g. a rotating mirror}
- 1/02835 . . . . {in combination with a light guide, e.g. optical fibre, glass plate ([light-guides per se G02B 6/00](#))}
- 1/0284 . . . . {in combination with a light integrating, concentrating or diffusing cavity}
- 1/02845 . . . . {using an elongated light source, e.g. tubular lamp, LED array}
- 1/0285 . . . . {in combination with at least one reflector which is in fixed relation to the light source}
- 1/02855 . . . . {in combination with a light guide, e.g. optical fibre, glass plate ([light-guides per se G02B 6/00](#))}
- 1/0286 . . . . {in combination with a light integrating, concentrating or defusing cavity}
- 1/02865 . . . . {using an array of light sources or a combination of such arrays, e.g. an LED bar}
- 1/0287 . . . . {using a tubular lamp or a combination of such lamps}
- 1/02875 . . . . . {comprising a reflective coating}
- 1/0288 . . . . {using a two-dimensional light source, e.g. two-dimensional LED array}
- 1/02885 . . . . {Means for compensating spatially uneven illumination, e.g. an aperture arrangement}
- 1/0289 . . . . {Light diffusing elements, e.g. plates or filters ([optical diffusing elements per se G02B 5/02](#))}
- 1/02895 . . . . {Additional elements in the illumination means or cooperating with the illumination means, e.g. filters ([H04N 1/02885 takes precedence; optical elements other than lenses per se G02B 5/00](#))}
- 1/029 . . . Heads optically focused on only one picture element at a time ([H04N 1/0281 takes precedence](#))
- 1/03 . . . with photodetectors arranged in a substantially linear array
- 1/0301 . . . . {using a bent optical path between the scanned line and the photodetector array, e.g. a folded optical path}
- 1/0303 . . . . . {with the scanned line and the photodetector array lying in non-parallel planes}
- 1/0305 . . . . . {with multiple folds of the optical path}
- 1/0306 . . . . {using a plurality of optical elements arrayed in the main scan direction, e.g. an array of lenses}
- 1/0308 . . . . {characterised by the design of the photodetectors, e.g. shape}
- 1/031 . . . . the photodetectors having a one-to-one and optically positive correspondence with the scanned picture elements, e.g. linear contact sensors
- 1/0311 . . . . . {using an array of elements to project the scanned image elements onto the photodetectors ([H04N 1/0318 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/0312 . . . . . {using an array of optical fibres or rod-lenses}
- 1/0313 . . . . . {Direct contact pick-up heads, i.e. heads having no array of elements to project the scanned image elements onto the photodetectors}
- 1/0314 . . . . . {using photodetectors and illumination means mounted in the same plane on a common support or substrate}
- 1/0315 . . . . . {using photodetectors and illumination means mounted on separate supports or substrates or mounted in different planes}
- 1/0316 . . . . . {illuminating the scanned image elements through the plane of the photodetector, e.g. back-light illumination}
- 1/0317 . . . . . {detecting the scanned image elements through the plane of the illumination means}
- 1/0318 . . . . . {Integral pick-up heads, i.e. self-contained heads whose basic elements are a light-source, a lens array and a photodetector array which are supported by a single-piece frame}
- 1/032 . . for picture information reproduction
- 1/0323 . . . {Heads moving to and away from the reproducing medium, e.g. for pressure sensitive reproducing}
- 1/0326 . . . {Magnetic heads}
- 1/034 . . . using ink, e.g. ink-jet heads ([H04N 1/0323 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/036 . . . for optical reproduction
- 1/04 . . Scanning arrangements {, i.e. arrangements for the displacement of active reading or reproducing elements relative to the original or reproducing medium, or *vice versa*} ([H04N 1/387 takes precedence](#))

- 1/0402 . . . {Scanning different formats; Scanning with different densities of dots per unit length, e.g. different numbers of dots per inch (dpi); Conversion of scanning standards ([H04N 1/00283](#) takes precedence; picture signal circuits for modification of image resolution [H04N 1/3935](#), [H04N 1/40068](#))}
- 1/0405 . . . {Different formats, e.g. A3 and A4}
- 1/0408 . . . {Different densities of dots per unit length}
- 1/0411 . . . . {in the main scanning direction}
- 1/0414 . . . . {in the sub scanning direction}
- 1/0417 . . . {Conversion of standards}
- 1/042 . . . {Details of the method used}
- 1/0423 . . . . {Switching between or selecting from a plurality of optical paths}
- 1/0426 . . . . {using different sized scanning elements, e.g. reproducing different sized dots}
- 1/0429 . . . . {Varying the size of apertures}
- 1/0432 . . . . {Varying the magnification of a single lens group}
- 1/0435 . . . . {Optical element switching, e.g. switching lenses into a single optical path}
- 1/0437 . . . . {Tilting an array with respect to the main or sub scanning direction}
- 1/044 . . . . {Tilting an optical element, e.g. a refractive plate ([H04N 1/0423](#) takes precedence)}
- 1/0443 . . . . {Varying the scanning velocity or position}
- 1/0446 . . . . {Varying the modulation time or intensity}
- 1/0449 . . . . {using different sets of scanning elements, e.g. for different formats}
- 1/0452 . . . . . {mounted on the same support or substrate}
- 1/0455 . . . . {using a single set of scanning elements, e.g. the whole of and a part of an array respectively for different formats}
- 1/0458 . . . . . {using different portions of the scanning elements for different formats or densities of dots}
- 1/0461 . . {part of the apparatus being used in common for reading and reproducing ([simultaneous scanning of the original picture and the reproduced picture with a common scanning device H04N 1/207](#))}
- 1/0464 . . {capable of performing non-simultaneous scanning at more than one scanning station}
- 1/0467 . . . {the different stations being used for transmissive and reflective originals}
- 1/047 . . Detection, control or error compensation of scanning velocity or position ({[H04N 1/0402](#) and } [H04N 1/17](#) take precedence)}
- 1/0473 . . . {in subscanning direction, e.g. picture start or line-to-line synchronisation}
- 1/0476 . . . {Indicating the scanning velocity}
- 1/053 . . . in main scanning direction, e.g. synchronisation of line start or picture elements in a line
- 1/06 . . using cylindrical picture-bearing surfaces {, i.e. scanning a main-scanning line substantially perpendicular to the axis and lying in a curved cylindrical surface}
- 1/0607 . . . {Scanning a concave surface, e.g. with internal drum type scanners ([H04N 1/0657](#) takes precedence)}
- 1/0614 . . . . {with main-scanning by rotation of the picture-bearing surface}
- 1/0621 . . . . {using a picture-bearing surface stationary in the main-scanning direction}
- 1/0628 . . . . . {using several scanning heads circumferentially spaced from one another and circumferentially aligned, e.g. mounted on a rotating disk}
- 1/0635 . . . . . {using oscillating or rotating mirrors}
- 1/0642 . . . . . {Scanners capable of scanning the total circumference of a closed cylinder}
- 1/065 . . . . . {using rotating prisms}
- 1/0657 . . . {Scanning a transparent surface, e.g. reading a transparency original}
- 1/0664 . . . {with sub-scanning by translational movement of the picture-bearing surface}
- 1/0671 . . . {with sub-scanning by translational movement of the main-scanning components}
- 1/0678 . . . . {using a lead-screw or worm}
- 1/0685 . . . . {using a belt or cable}
- 1/0692 . . . {Details of the cylindrical surface ([for mounting or holding the sheet H04N 1/08](#))}
- 1/08 . . . Mechanisms for mounting or holding the sheet around the drum
- 1/0804 . . . . {Holding methods}
- 1/0808 . . . . . {Holding corners of the sheet}
- 1/0813 . . . . . {Holding sides of the sheet which are substantially parallel to the drum axis}
- 1/0817 . . . . . {Holding sides of the sheet which are substantially perpendicular to the drum axis}
- 1/0821 . . . . . {Holding substantially the whole of the sheet, e.g. with a retaining sheet}
- 1/0826 . . . . . {Holding or supporting the sheet in the vicinity of the scanning element}
- 1/083 . . . . {Holding means}
- 1/0834 . . . . . {Flexible holding means, e.g. envelopes or sheaths}
- 1/0839 . . . . . {Mechanical clamps, i.e. means for holding the sheet against the drum by mechanical force}
- 1/0843 . . . . . {Pins or the like}
- 1/0847 . . . . . {Magnetic means}
- 1/0852 . . . . . {Adhesive means}
- 1/0856 . . . . . {Suction or vacuum means}
- 1/086 . . . . . {using grooves}
- 1/0865 . . . . . {Single holding means holding both ends of a sheet}
- 1/0869 . . . . . {capable of holding different sized sheets}
- 1/0873 . . . . . {for holding the sheet on the internal surface of the drum}
- 1/0878 . . . . . {for holding a sheet adjacent an aperture on an opaque drum}
- 1/0882 . . . . {Registering or guiding means other than the holding means}
- 1/0886 . . . . {Mounting the sheet from a roll}
- 1/0891 . . . . {Detecting failure of the holding, e.g. by detecting a loose sheet}
- 1/0895 . . . . {Means other than holding means for removing the sheet from the drum}
- 1/10 . . using flat picture-bearing surfaces ({[H04N 1/113](#), [H04N 1/195](#) take precedence})}
- 1/1004 . . . {using two-dimensional electrical scanning, e.g. cathode-ray tubes ([using two-dimensional arrays H04N 1/195](#))}

- 1/1008 . . . {with sub-scanning by translatory movement of the picture-bearing surface}
- 1/1013 . . . {with sub-scanning by translatory movement of at least a part of the main-scanning components [\(H04N 1/107 takes precedence\)](#)}
- 1/1017 . . . . {the main-scanning components remaining positionally invariant with respect to one another in the sub-scanning direction}
- 1/1021 . . . . {using a lead screw or worm}
- 1/1026 . . . . {using a belt or cable}
- 1/103 . . . . {by engaging a rail}
- 1/1035 . . . . {by other means, e.g. linear motor or hydraulic system}
- 1/1039 . . . . {Movement of the main scanning components}
- 1/1043 . . . . . {of a sensor array}
- 1/1048 . . . . . {of a lens or lens arrangement}
- 1/1052 . . . . . {of a mirror}
- 1/1056 . . . . . {of two or more separate mirror arrangements}
- 1/1061 . . . {Details relating to flat picture-bearing surfaces, e.g. transparent platen}
- 1/1065 . . . . {Support or mounting of the flat picture-bearing surface}
- 1/107 . . . with manual scanning
- 1/1071 . . . . {using a folded light path}
- 1/1072 . . . . {Means for guiding the scanning, e.g. rules [\(H04N 1/1077 takes precedence\)](#)}
- 1/1074 . . . . {Apparatus incorporating a hardcopy reproducing device, e.g. a printer, not working directly by manual scanning}
- 1/1075 . . . . {Arrangements for facilitating holding of the scanner, e.g. shapes, grips}
- 1/1077 . . . . {Arrangements for facilitating movement over the scanned medium, e.g. disposition of rollers}
- 1/1078 . . . . {by moving the scanned medium}
- 1/113 . . using oscillating or rotating mirrors
- 1/1135 . . . {for the main-scan only}
- 1/12 . . using the sheet-feed movement {or the medium-advance or the drum-rotation movement} as the slow scanning component, {e.g. arrangements for the main-scanning} [\(sheet-feed movement by translatory movement of a flat picture-bearing surface H04N 1/1008; main-scanning using oscillating or rotating mirrors H04N 1/113; \)](#) [using multi-element arrays H04N 1/19](#)
- 1/1205 . . . {using a device, e.g. an optical fibre bundle, converting rectilinear scanning into circular line scanning or *vice versa*}
- 1/121 . . . {Feeding arrangements [\(transporting sheets to or from the scanning position H04N 1/0057; control or error compensation of sub-scanning velocity H04N 1/0473\)](#)}
- 1/1215 . . . . {Feeding using one or more cylindrical platens or rollers in the immediate vicinity of the main scanning line}
- 1/122 . . . . {using a feed belt [\(feed belts for transporting to or from the scanning position H04N 1/0061\)](#)}
- 1/1225 . . . . {Means for maintaining contact between the sheet and the image sensor, e.g. pressing means}
- 1/123 . . . . {Using a dedicated sheet guide element}
- 1/1235 . . . . {Feeding a sheet past a transparent plate; Details thereof}
- 1/124 . . . . . {Plate shape}
- 1/1245 . . . . . {Arrangements for mounting or holding the plate}
- 1/125 . . . . . {the sheet feeding apparatus serving an auxiliary function, e.g. as a white reference}
- 1/1255 . . . {Electronic copy boards}
- 1/126 . . . {Arrangements for the main scanning}
- 1/1265 . . . . {using a holographic scanning element}
- 1/127 . . . . {using a cathode ray tube or the like}
- 1/1275 . . . . {using a solid-state deflector, e.g. an acousto-optic deflector or a semiconductor waveguide device}
- 1/128 . . . . {using a scanning head arranged for linear reciprocating motion}
- 1/1285 . . . . {using apertures arranged in a spiral}
- 1/129 . . . . {using an element rotating or oscillating about an axis not covered by any other group or code}
- 1/1295 . . . . {using an optical guide, e.g. a fibre-optic bundle between the scanned line and the scanning elements}
- 1/14 . . . using a rotating endless belt carrying the scanning heads {or at least a part of the main scanning components}
- 1/16 . . . using a rotating helical element
- 1/17 . . the scanning speed being dependent on content of picture
- 1/19 . . using multi-element arrays
- 1/1903 . . . {Arrangements for enabling electronic abutment of lines or areas independently scanned by different elements of an array or by different arrays}
- 1/1906 . . . {Arrangements for performing substitution scanning for a defective element}
- 1/191 . . . the array comprising a one-dimensional array {, or a combination of one-dimensional arrays, or a substantially one-dimensional array, e.g. an array of staggered elements}
- 1/1911 . . . . {Simultaneously or substantially simultaneously scanning picture elements on more than one main scanning line, e.g. scanning in swaths}
- 1/1912 . . . . . {Scanning main scanning lines which are spaced apart from one another in the sub-scanning direction}
- 1/1913 . . . . . {Scanning adjacent picture elements in different scans of the array, e.g. in complementary checkerboard patterns}
- 1/1915 . . . . . {with subscan displacement of the array between successive scans}
- 1/1916 . . . . . {using an array of elements displaced from one another in the main scan direction, e.g. a diagonally arranged array}
- 1/1917 . . . . . {Staggered element array, e.g. arrays with elements arranged in a zigzag}
- 1/1918 . . . . . {Combination of arrays}
- 1/192 . . . . Simultaneously {or substantially simultaneously} scanning picture elements on one main scanning line
- 1/193 . . . . . using electrically scanned linear arrays {, e.g. linear CCD arrays}

- 1/1931 . . . . . {with scanning elements electrically interconnected in groups}
- 1/1932 . . . . . {using an array of elements displaced from one another in the sub scan direction, e.g. a diagonally arranged array}
- 1/1933 . . . . . {Staggered element arrays, e.g. arrays with elements arranged in a zigzag}
- 1/1934 . . . . . {Combination of arrays}
- 1/1935 . . . . . {Optical means for mapping the whole or part of a scanned line onto the array}
- 1/1936 . . . . . {using a light guide, e.g. an optical fibre bundle or array}
- 1/1937 . . . . . {using a reflecting element, e.g. a mirror or a prism}
- 1/1938 . . . . . {Details of the electrical scanning}
- 1/195 . . . the array comprising a two-dimensional array {or a combination of two-dimensional arrays}
- 1/19505 . . . . {Scanning picture elements spaced apart from one another in at least one direction}
- 1/1951 . . . . . {in one direction}
- 1/19515 . . . . . {in two directions}
- 1/19521 . . . . . {Arrangements for moving the elements of the array relative to the scanned image or vice versa}
- 1/19526 . . . . . {Optical means}
- 1/19531 . . . . . {Reflecting elements}
- 1/19536 . . . . . {Refracting elements}
- 1/19542 . . . . . {Fibre bundles}
- 1/19547 . . . . . {Apertures}
- 1/19552 . . . . . {Rotation of optical elements}
- 1/19557 . . . . . {about an axis parallel to the optical axis}
- 1/19563 . . . . . {about an axis perpendicular to the optical axis}
- 1/19568 . . . . . {Displacing the array}
- 1/19573 . . . . . {Displacing the scanned image}
- 1/19578 . . . . . {Hybrid systems, i.e. systems combining more than one arrangement for moving the elements of the array relative to the scanned image or vice versa}
- 1/19584 . . . . . {Combination of arrays}
- 1/19589 . . . . . {Optical means, e.g. an optical fibre bundle, for mapping the whole or a part of a scanned image onto the array}
- 1/19594 . . . . . {using a television camera or a still video camera}
- 1/203 . . . Simultaneous scanning of two or more separate pictures {, e.g. two sides of the same sheet (refeeding a sheet for double-sided scanning H04N 1/00572)}
- 1/2032 . . . {of two pictures corresponding to two sides of a single medium (refeeding a sheet for double-sided scanning H04N 1/00572)}
- 1/2034 . . . . {at identical corresponding positions, i.e. without time delay between the two image signals}
- 1/2036 . . . {of a plurality of pictures corresponding to a single side of a plurality of media}
- 1/2038 . . . . {lying in the same plane}
- 1/207 . . . Simultaneous scanning of the original picture and the reproduced picture with a common scanning device
- 1/21 . . . Intermediate information storage (H04N 1/387, H04N 1/41 take precedence {; for control between transmitter and receiver or between image input and image output device H04N 1/32358; indexing, editing G11B 27/00)}
- 1/2104 . . {for one or a few pictures}
- 1/2108 . . . {for one picture only}
- 1/2112 . . . {using still video cameras}
- 1/2116 . . . . {Picture signal recording combined with imagewise recording, e.g. photographic recording (photographic cameras G03B 19/00)}
- 1/212 . . . . {Motion video recording combined with still video recording (television signal recording H04N 5/76)}
- 1/2125 . . . . {Display of information relating to the still picture recording}
- 1/2129 . . . . {Recording in, or reproducing from, a specific memory area or areas, or recording or reproducing at a specific moment}
- 1/2133 . . . . . {Recording or reproducing at a specific moment, e.g. time interval or time-lapse}
- 1/2137 . . . . . {with temporary storage before final recording, e.g. in a frame buffer}
- 1/2141 . . . . . {in a multi-frame buffer}
- 1/2145 . . . . . {of a sequence of images for selection of a single frame before final recording, e.g. from a continuous sequence captured before and after shutter-release}
- 1/215 . . . . . {Recording a sequence of still pictures, e.g. burst mode}
- 1/2154 . . . . . {the still video camera incorporating a hardcopy reproducing device, e.g. a printer}
- 1/2158 . . . {using a detachable storage unit}
- 1/2162 . . . {using a non electronic storage unit, e.g. by recording marks on a sheet}
- 1/2166 . . {for mass storage, e.g. in document filing systems (information retrieval G06F 16/00)}
- 1/217 . . . {Interfaces allowing access to a single user}
- 1/2175 . . . . {with local image input}
- 1/2179 . . . {Interfaces allowing access to a plurality of users, e.g. connection to electronic image libraries}
- 1/2183 . . . . {the stored images being distributed among a plurality of different locations, e.g. among a plurality of users}
- 1/2187 . . . . {with image input from a plurality of different locations or from a non-central location, e.g. from one or more users}
- 1/2191 . . . . {for simultaneous, independent access by a plurality of different users}
- 1/2195 . . . {with temporary storage before final recording or on play-back, e.g. in a frame buffer}
- 1/23 . . . Reproducing arrangements
- 1/2307 . . {Circuits or arrangements for the control thereof, e.g. using a programmed control device, according to a measured quantity (H04N 1/27, H04N 1/29 take precedence)}
- 1/2315 . . . {according to characteristics of the reproducing apparatus, e.g. capability}
- 1/2323 . . . {according to characteristics of the reproducing medium, e.g. type, size or availability}



- 1/233 . . . {according to characteristics of the data to be reproduced, e.g. number of lines}
- 1/2338 . . . {according to user specified instructions, e.g. user selection of reproduction mode}
- 1/2346 . . . {according to a detected condition or state of the reproducing device, e.g. temperature or ink quantity}
- 1/2353 . . . {Selecting a particular reproducing medium from amongst a plurality of media or from a particular tray, e.g. paper or transparency}
- 1/2361 . . . {Selecting a particular reproducing device from amongst a plurality of devices, e.g. high or low resolution devices}
- 1/2369 . . . {Selecting a particular reproducing mode from amongst a plurality of modes, e.g. paper saving or normal, or simplex or duplex}
- 1/2376 . . . {Inhibiting or interrupting a particular operation or device ([preventing unauthorised reproduction H04N 1/00838](#))}
- 1/2384 . . . {for fitting data onto a particular reproducing medium without modifying the image data}
- 1/2392 . . . {for displaying or indicating, e.g. a condition or state ([details of displaying or indicating means H04N 1/00405](#))}
- 1/27 . . involving production of a magnetic intermediate picture
- 1/29 . . involving production of an electrostatic intermediate picture
- 1/295 . . . {Circuits or arrangements for the control thereof, e.g. using a programmed control device, according to a measured quantity}
- 1/31 . . Mechanical arrangements for picture transmission, e.g. adaptation of clutches, gearing, gear transmissions
- 1/32 . Circuits or arrangements for control or supervision between transmitter and receiver {or between image input and image output device, e.g. between a still-image camera and its memory or between a still-image camera and a printer device ([H04N 1/38](#), [H04N 1/387 take precedence](#))}
- 1/32005 . . {Automation of particular receiver jobs, e.g. rejecting unwanted calls ([requesting a communication from a transmitter H04N 1/32771](#); with picture signal storage for forwarding messages [H04N 1/32358](#))}
- 1/3201 . . . {Rejecting unwanted calls}
- 1/32016 . . . {according to the caller's identification, e.g. fax number ([H04N 1/3201 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/32021 . . . {according to the type of received information}
- 1/32026 . . . {Changing the receiver mode of operation, e.g. paper reception to memory reception or [vice versa H04N 1/32673 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/32032 . . . {Polling of transmitters}
- 1/32037 . . {Automation of particular transmitter jobs, e.g. multi-address calling, auto-dialing}
- 1/32042 . . . {with reading of job-marks on a page}
- 1/32048 . . . {Auto-dialling or Auto-calling ([H04N 1/32053 - H04N 1/32074 take precedence](#))}
- 1/32053 . . . {Delayed transmission, e.g. to make use of reduced connection rates ([H04N 1/32074 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/32058 . . . {Abbreviated dialing, e.g. one-touch dialing}
- 1/32064 . . . {Multi-address calling}
- 1/32069 . . . . {simultaneously to a plurality of destinations, e.g. multi-casting}
- 1/32074 . . . {Redialing, e.g. after failure to make a connection}
- 1/3208 . . . {Transmitting a plurality of separate messages to a common destination in a single transmission}
- 1/32085 . . . {Automation of other tasks, e.g. repetitive execution or sequencing}
- 1/3209 . . . {according to the called number}
- 1/32096 . . . {Checking the destination, e.g. correspondence of manual input with stored destination}
- 1/32101 . . {Display, printing, storage or transmission of additional information, e.g. ID code, date and time or title}
- 1/32106 . . . {separate from the image data, e.g. in a different computer file}
- 1/32112 . . . . {in a separate computer file, document page or paper sheet, e.g. a fax cover sheet ([H04N 1/32122 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/32117 . . . . {in a separate transmission or protocol signal prior to or subsequent to the image data transmission, e.g. in digital identification signal [DIS], in non standard setup [NSS] or in non standard field [NSF] ([for mode signalling H04N 1/333](#))}
- 1/32122 . . . . {in a separate device, e.g. in a memory or on a display separate from image data}
- 1/32128 . . . {attached to the image data, e.g. file header, transmitted message header, information on the same page or in the same computer file as the image ([for information embedded in the image H04N 1/32144](#))}
- 1/32133 . . . . {on the same paper sheet, e.g. a facsimile page header}
- 1/32138 . . . . . {in an electronic device attached to the sheet, e.g. in an RFID tag}
- 1/32144 . . . {embedded in the image data, i.e. enclosed or integrated in the image, e.g. watermark, super-imposed logo or stamp}
- 1/32149 . . . . {Methods relating to embedding, encoding, decoding, detection or retrieval operations}
- 1/32154 . . . . . {Transform domain methods ([H04N 1/32309 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/3216 . . . . . {using Fourier transforms}
- 1/32165 . . . . . {using cosine transforms}
- 1/3217 . . . . . {using wavelet transforms}
- 1/32176 . . . . . {using Walsh, Hadamard or Walsh-Hadamard transforms}
- 1/32181 . . . . . {using Karhunen-Loeve transforms}
- 1/32187 . . . . . {with selective or adaptive application of the additional information, e.g. in selected frequency coefficients}
- 1/32192 . . . . . {according to calculated or estimated visibility of the additional information in the image}
- 1/32197 . . . . . {according to the spatial domain characteristics of the transform domain components}
- 1/32203 . . . . . {Spatial or amplitude domain methods ([H04N 1/32309 takes precedence](#))}

1/32208 . . . . .	{involving changing the magnitude of selected pixels, e.g. overlay of information or super-imposition ( <a href="#">H04N 1/32219</a> , <a href="#">H04N 1/32224</a> take precedence)}	1/32363 . . . . .	{at the transmitter or at the receiver}
1/32213 . . . . .	{Modulating the least significant bits of pixels}	1/32368 . . . . .	{Functions of a still picture terminal memory associated with transmission}
1/32219 . . . . .	{involving changing the position of selected pixels, e.g. word shifting, or involving modulating the size of image components, e.g. of characters ( <a href="#">H04N 1/32224</a> takes precedence)}	1/32374 . . . . .	{Storage subsequent to an attempted transmission}
1/32224 . . . . .	{Replacing pixels of an image with other pixels from the same image, e.g. texture block coding}	1/32379 . . . . .	{Functions of a still picture terminal memory associated with reception}
1/32229 . . . . .	{with selective or adaptive application of the additional information, e.g. in selected regions of the image ( <a href="#">H04N 1/32213</a> takes precedence)}	1/32384 . . . . .	{Storage subsequent to an attempted output at the receiver, e.g. in case of printer malfunction}
1/32235 . . . . .	{in highly textured regions}	1/3239 . . . . .	{Forwarding image data, e.g. to an absent recipient}
1/3224 . . . . .	{in edge regions}	1/32395 . . . . .	{Informing an absent addressee of receipt}
1/32245 . . . . .	{Random or pseudorandom selection of pixels}	1/324 . . . . .	{intermediate the transmitter and receiver terminals, e.g. at an exchange}
1/32251 . . . . .	{in multilevel data, e.g. greyscale or continuous tone data}	1/32406 . . . . .	{in connection with routing or relaying, e.g. using a fax-server or a store-and-forward facility ( <a href="#">stored and forward data switching systems H04L 12/54</a> )}
1/32256 . . . . .	{in halftone data}	1/32411 . . . . .	{Handling instructions for routing or relaying}
1/32261 . . . . .	{in binary data ( <a href="#">H04N 1/32256</a> takes precedence)}	1/32416 . . . . .	{Storage of instructions or retrieval of prestored instructions}
1/32267 . . . . .	{combined with processing of the image}	1/32422 . . . . .	{Reprocessing messages, e.g. in case the intended destination is busy}
1/32272 . . . . .	{Encryption or ciphering}	1/32427 . . . . .	{Optimising routing, e.g. for minimum cost}
1/32277 . . . . .	{Compression}	1/32432 . . . . .	{in a particular memory file for retrieval by the user, e.g. in a facsimile mailbox}
1/32283 . . . . .	{Hashing}	1/32438 . . . . .	{Informing the addressee of reception}
1/32288 . . . . .	{Multiple embedding, e.g. cocktail embedding, or redundant embedding, e.g. repeating the additional information at a plurality of locations in the image}	1/32443 . . . . .	{with asynchronous operation of the image input and output devices connected to the memory}
1/32293 . . . . .	{Repeating the additional information in a regular pattern}	1/32448 . . . . .	{Controlling data flow to or from the memory in relation to the available memory capacity}
1/32299 . . . . .	{using more than one embedding method}	1/32454 . . . . .	{Controlling data flow to or from the memory in relation to the amount of data, e.g. file size}
1/32304 . . . . .	{Embedding different sets of additional information}	1/32459 . . . . .	{for changing the arrangement of the stored data}
1/32309 . . . . .	{in colour image data}	1/32464 . . . . .	{Changing the arrangement of pages or documents, e.g. for producing pages to be bound}
1/32315 . . . . .	{Selecting a particular method from amongst a plurality of methods}	1/3247 . . . . .	{Changing the arrangement of data in a page, e.g. reversing the order to produce a mirror image}
1/3232 . . . . .	{Robust embedding or watermarking}	1/32475 . . . . .	{Changing the format of the data, e.g. parallel to serial or <i>vice versa</i> }
1/32325 . . . . .	{the embedded data being visible}	1/3248 . . . . .	{Storage of at least a part of one of two image bearing sides of a single sheet, e.g. for two sided copying}
1/32331 . . . . .	{Fragile embedding or watermarking}	1/32486 . . . . .	{Storage for making a plurality of copies or reproductions}
1/32336 . . . . .	{Informed embedding, i.e. the original image being known for the encoding or decoding method}	1/32491 . . . . .	{alternate storage in and retrieval from two parallel memories, e.g. using ping-pong buffers}
1/32341 . . . . .	{Blind embedding, i.e. the original image not being known beforehand}	1/32496 . . . . .	{Changing the task performed, e.g. reading and transmitting, receiving and reproducing, copying ( <a href="#">facsimile mode changing H04N 1/333</a> )}
1/32347 . . . . .	{Reversible embedding, i.e. lossless, invertible, erasable, removable or distortion-free embedding}	1/32502 . . . . .	{in systems having a plurality of input or output devices}
1/32352 . . . . .	{Controlling detectability or arrangements to facilitate detection or retrieval of the embedded information, e.g. using markers ( <a href="#">for decoding, detection or retrieval operations H04N 1/32149</a> and subgroups take precedence)}	1/32507 . . . . .	{a plurality of input devices}
1/32358 . . . . .	{using picture signal storage, e.g. at transmitter ( <a href="#">H04N 1/17</a> takes precedence)}		

- 1/32512 . . . . {of different type, e.g. internal and external devices}
- 1/32518 . . . . {details of interfacing}
- 1/32523 . . . {a plurality of output devices}
- 1/32529 . . . . {of different type, e.g. internal and external devices}
- 1/32534 . . . . {details of interfacing}
- 1/32539 . . . . {Detecting or indicating the status of the output devices}
- 1/32545 . . . {Distributing a job or task among a plurality of input devices or a plurality of output devices}
- 1/3255 . . . . {Hybrid jobs, i.e. performing different parts of the same job on different devices, e.g. colour and B/W pages on different devices}
- 1/32555 . . . . {Large jobs, i.e. performing identical parts of the same job on different devices}
- 1/32561 . . {using a programmed control device, e.g. a microprocessor}
- 1/32566 . . . {at the transmitter or at the receiver}
- 1/32571 . . . {Details of system components}
- 1/32577 . . . . {Input interface}
- 1/32582 . . . . {Output interface}
- 1/32587 . . . . {Controller}
- 1/32593 . . . {Using a plurality of controllers, e.g. for controlling different interfaces}
- 1/32598 . . . {Bus based systems}
- 1/32603 . . . . {Multi-bus systems}
- 1/32609 . . {Fault detection or counter-measures, e.g. original mis-positioned, shortage of paper}
- 1/32614 . . . {related to a single-mode communication, e.g. at the transmitter or at the receiver}
- 1/32619 . . . . {with retransmission (retransmission after changing the mode [H04N 1/3333](#))}
- 1/32625 . . . {Fault detection}
- 1/3263 . . . . {of reading apparatus or transmitter, e.g. original jam}
- 1/32635 . . . . {of reproducing apparatus or receiver, e.g. out of paper}
- 1/32641 . . . . {of transmission or transmitted data, e.g. interruption or wrong number of pages}
- 1/32646 . . . {Counter-measures (inhibiting an operation [H04N 1/00925](#), interrupting an operation [H04N 1/00915](#))}
- 1/32651 . . . . {Indicating or reporting (details of user-machine interface [H04N 1/0035](#))}
- 1/32657 . . . . {locally}
- 1/32662 . . . . {remotely, e.g. to the transmitter from the receiver}
- 1/32667 . . . . {Restarting a communication or performing a recovery operation}
- 1/32673 . . . . {Adjusting or controlling an operating mode, e.g. from paper reception to memory reception ([H04N 1/32678](#) takes precedence; inhibiting an operation [H04N 1/00925](#))}
- 1/32678 . . . . {Performing substitution, e.g. substitute reception or substituting a corrupted line of data ([H04N 1/32384](#) takes precedence)}
- 1/32683 . . . . {Preventive counter-measures, e.g. using redundant hardware, or anticipating a fault (arrangements for keeping a communication line open [H04N 1/32795](#))}
- 1/32689 . . . . {Involving the use of error correction codes}
- 1/32694 . . . . {Storing a fault condition in memory}
- 1/327 . . . Initiating, continuing or ending a single-mode communication; Handshaking therefor ([H04N 1/32614](#) takes precedence)}
- 1/32702 . . . {using digital control signals ([H04N 1/32704](#), [H04N 1/32614](#), [H04N 1/32771](#) take precedence)}
- 1/32704 . . . {Establishing a communication with one of a facsimile and another telecommunication apparatus sharing a single line}
- 1/32706 . . . . {Type of the other apparatus}
- 1/32708 . . . . {Telephone}
- 1/3271 . . . . {Telephone answering machine}
- 1/32713 . . . . {Data transmission device, e.g. switched network of teleprinters for the distribution of text-based information transceiver}
- 1/32715 . . . . {Detecting}
- 1/32717 . . . . {a calling tone, e.g. CI}
- 1/32719 . . . . {a facsimile calling signal, e.g. CNG}
- 1/32721 . . . . {facsimile protocol signals, e.g. DCS or TSI}
- 1/32723 . . . . {speech signals}
- 1/32726 . . . . {signals other than facsimile protocol signals, e.g. DTMF signals}
- 1/32728 . . . . {an off-hook condition}
- 1/3273 . . . . {a loop current}
- 1/32732 . . . . {within a predetermined time}
- 1/32734 . . . . {Maintaining the detecting operation after an apparatus has been connected to the line}
- 1/32736 . . . . {a state or mode of the facsimile apparatus ([H04N 1/32728](#) takes precedence)}
- 1/32739 . . . . {Generating signals}
- 1/32741 . . . . {Generating ringing or calling signals or tones}
- 1/32743 . . . . {Generating ring-back signals or tones}
- 1/32745 . . . . {Generating messages, indications or warnings locally}
- 1/32747 . . . . {Controlling the connection of the apparatus}
- 1/3275 . . . . {Giving priority to one of the apparatus}
- 1/32752 . . . . {Manual connection of one of the apparatus other than by putting a telephone off-hook}
- 1/32754 . . . . {Automatically connecting another apparatus when a first one has finished}
- 1/32756 . . . . {Inhibiting connection of another apparatus when a first one is connected}
- 1/32758 . . . . {Sending a voice message other than from a telephone answering machine}
- 1/3276 . . . . {Ring suppression}
- 1/32763 . . . . {Supplying power to the apparatus}
- 1/32765 . . . {Initiating a communication}
- 1/32767 . . . . {in response to a user operation, e.g. actuating a switch ([H04N 1/32769](#) and [H04N 1/32771](#) take precedence)}
- 1/32769 . . . . {in response to detection of an original}
- 1/32771 . . . . {in response to a request, e.g. for a particular document}
- 1/32773 . . . . {to capture an image, e.g. at a location or event remote from the requester}
- 1/32776 . . . . {using an interactive, user-operated device, e.g. a computer terminal, mobile telephone ([H04N 1/32782](#), [H04N 1/32784](#) take precedence)}

- 1/32778 . . . . {using a mark-sheet or machine-readable code request}
- 1/3278 . . . . {using a protocol or handshaking signal, e.g. non-standard set-up [NSS]}
- 1/32782 . . . . {using a tone- or pulse-coded request}
- 1/32784 . . . . {using a voice request}
- 1/32786 . . . {Ending a communication ([H04N 1/32614 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/32789 . . . {Details of handshaking ([H04N 1/32793](#), [H04N 1/32795](#) and [H04N 1/32797 take precedence](#))}
- 1/32791 . . . . {Arrangements for reducing the handshaking procedure or protocol time}
- 1/32793 . . . {Controlling a receiver or transmitter non-communication function in response to a communication control signal}
- 1/32795 . . . {Arrangements for keeping the communication line open}
- 1/32797 . . . {Systems adapted to communicate over more than one channel, e.g. via ISDN ([changing transmission mode according to type of channel H04N 2201/33364](#); [multichannel or multilink communication protocols H04L 69/14](#))}
- 1/333 . . . Mode signalling or mode changing; Handshaking therefor
- 1/33307 . . . {prior to start of transmission, input or output of the picture signal only}
- 1/33315 . . . . {reading or reproducing mode only, e.g. sheet size, resolution}
- 1/33323 . . . . {transmission mode only, e.g. speed}
- 1/3333 . . . {during transmission, input or output of the picture signal; within a single document or page}
- 1/33338 . . . {adapting to particular facsimile group, e.g. G3}
- 1/33346 . . . {adapting to a particular standardised protocol}
- 1/33353 . . . {according to the available bandwidth used for a single communication, e.g. the number of ISDN channels used}
- 1/33361 . . . {according to characteristics or the state of the communication line ([H04N 1/33353](#) and [H04N 2201/33371 take precedence](#))}
- 1/33369 . . . {Storage of mode or retrieval of prestored mode}
- 1/33376 . . . {according to characteristics or state of one of the communicating parties, e.g. available memory capacity}
- 1/33384 . . . . {according to transient characteristics or state}
- 1/33392 . . . {Details of handshaking}
- 1/34 . . . for coin-freed systems {; Pay systems}
- 1/342 . . . {Accounting or charging based on content, e.g. charging for access to a particular document}
- 1/344 . . . {Accounting or charging based on type of function or service used, e.g. copying, faxing}
- 1/346 . . . {Accounting or charging based on a number representative of the service used, e.g. number of operations or copies produced}
- 1/348 . . . {Accounting or charging based on time or day}
- 1/36 . . . for synchronising or phasing transmitter and receiver
- 1/38 . . . Circuits or arrangements for blanking or otherwise eliminating unwanted parts of pictures ([H04N 1/387 takes precedence](#))
- 1/387 . . . Composing, repositioning or otherwise {geometrically} modifying originals
- 1/3871 . . . {the composed originals being of different kinds, e.g. low- and high-resolution originals}
- 1/3872 . . . {Repositioning or masking}
- 1/3873 . . . {defined only by a limited number of coordinate points or parameters, e.g. corners, centre; for trimming}
- 1/3875 . . . . {combined with enlarging or reducing ([enlarging or reducing per se H04N 1/393](#))}
- 1/3876 . . . {Recombination of partial images to recreate the original image}
- 1/3877 . . . {Image rotation}
- 1/3878 . . . {Skew detection or correction}
- 1/393 . . . Enlarging or reducing
- 1/3935 . . . {with modification of image resolution, i.e. determining the values of picture elements at new relative positions}
- 1/40 . . . Picture signal circuits ([H04N 1/387 takes precedence](#))
- 1/40006 . . . {Compensating for the effects of ageing, i.e. changes over time}
- 1/40012 . . . {Conversion of colour to monochrome}
- 1/40025 . . . {Circuits exciting or modulating particular heads for reproducing continuous tone value scales ([H04N 1/401](#), [H04N 1/407 take precedence](#))}
- 1/40031 . . . . {for a plurality of reproducing elements simultaneously}
- 1/40037 . . . . {the reproducing element being a laser}
- 1/40043 . . . . {using more than one type of modulation, e.g. pulse width modulation and amplitude modulation}
- 1/4005 . . . . {with regulating circuits, e.g. dependent upon ambient temperature or feedback control}
- 1/40056 . . . {Circuits for driving or energising particular reading heads or original illumination means ([H04N 1/401](#), [H04N 1/407 take precedence](#))}
- 1/40062 . . . {Discrimination between different image types, e.g. two-tone, continuous tone}
- 1/40068 . . . {Modification of image resolution, i.e. determining the values of picture elements at new relative positions ([H04N 1/3935 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/40075 . . . {Descreening, i.e. converting a halftone signal into a corresponding continuous-tone signal; Rescreening, i.e. combined descreening and halftoning}
- 1/40081 . . . {Soft dot halftoning, i.e. producing halftone dots with gradual edges}
- 1/40087 . . . {Multi-toning, i.e. converting a continuous-tone signal for reproduction with more than two discrete brightnesses or optical densities, e.g. dots of grey and black inks on white paper}
- 1/40093 . . . {Modification of content of picture, e.g. retouching ([geometric modifications H04N 1/387](#))}
- 1/401 . . . Compensating positionally unequal response of the pick-up or reproducing head ([H04N 1/403 takes precedence](#))
- 1/4015 . . . . {of the reproducing head}
- 1/403 . . . Discrimination between the two tones in the picture signal of a two-tone original



- 1/405 . . Halftoning, i.e. converting the picture signal of a continuous-tone original into a corresponding signal showing only two levels
- 1/4051 . . . {producing a dispersed dots halftone pattern, the dots having substantially the same size (different sizes [H04N 1/4057](#))}
- 1/4052 . . . . {by error diffusion, i.e. transferring the binarising error to neighbouring dot decisions}
- 1/4053 . . . . . {with threshold modulated relative to input image data or [vice versa](#)}
- 1/4055 . . . {producing a clustered dots or a size modulated halftone pattern}
- 1/4056 . . . . {the pattern varying in one dimension only, e.g. dash length, pulse width modulation [PWM]}
- 1/4057 . . . . {the pattern being a mixture of differently sized sub-patterns, e.g. spots having only a few different diameters ([multi-toning H04N 1/40087](#))}
- 1/4058 . . . . {with details for producing a halftone screen at an oblique angle ([H04N 1/4056 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/407 . . Control or modification of tonal gradation or of extreme levels, e.g. background level
- 1/4072 . . . {dependent on the contents of the original}
- 1/4074 . . . . {using histograms}
- 1/4076 . . . {dependent on references outside the picture}
- 1/4078 . . . . {using gradational references, e.g. grey-scale test pattern analysis}
- 1/409 . . Edge or detail enhancement; Noise or error suppression
- 1/4092 . . . {Edge or detail enhancement}
- 1/4095 . . . {Correction of errors due to scanning a two-sided document, i.e. show-through correction}
- 1/4097 . . . {Removing errors due external factors, e.g. dust, scratches}
- 1/41 . . Bandwidth or redundancy reduction ([by scanning H04N 1/17](#) ; methods or arrangements for coding, decoding, compressing or decompressing digital video signals [H04N 19/00](#))}
- 1/4105 . . {for halftone screened pictures}
- 1/411 . . for the transmission {or storage} or reproduction of two-tone pictures, e.g. black and white pictures
- 1/4115 . . . {involving the recognition of specific patterns, e.g. by symbol matching}
- 1/413 . . . Systems or arrangements allowing the picture to be reproduced without loss or modification of picture-information
- 1/4135 . . . . {in which a baseband signal showing more than two values or a continuously varying baseband signal is transmitted or recorded}
- 1/415 . . . . in which the picture-elements are subdivided or grouped into fixed one-dimensional or two-dimensional blocks
- 1/417 . . . . using predictive or differential encoding
- 1/4172 . . . . . {Progressive encoding, i.e. by decomposition into high and low resolution components}
- 1/4175 . . . . . {involving the encoding of tone transitions with respect to tone transitions in a reference line}
- 1/4177 . . . . . {encoding document change data, e.g. form drop out data}
- 1/419 . . . . in which encoding of the length of a succession of picture-elements of the same value along a scanning line is the only encoding step ([H04N 1/4135 - H04N 1/417 take precedence](#))}
- 1/42 . . Systems for two-way working {, e.g. conference systems ([H04N 1/32 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/44 . . Secrecy systems
- 1/4406 . . {Restricting access, e.g. according to user identity (mechanisms actuated y cards, PIN or the like in apparatus for dispensing [G07F 7/08](#))}
- 1/4413 . . . {involving the use of passwords, ID codes or the like, e.g. PIN}
- 1/442 . . . {using a biometric data reading device}
- 1/4426 . . . {involving separate means, e.g. a server, a magnetic card}
- 1/4433 . . . {to an apparatus, part of an apparatus or an apparatus function}
- 1/444 . . . {to a particular document or image or part thereof}
- 1/4446 . . {Hiding of documents or document information}
- 1/4453 . . . {Covering, i.e. concealing from above, or folding}
- 1/446 . . . {Enclosing, i.e. retaining in an enclosure, or locking up}
- 1/4466 . . . {Enveloping, wrapping, or sealing, i.e. keeping the document closed}
- 1/4473 . . . {Destruction, e.g. shredding of documents}
- 1/448 . . {Rendering the image unintelligible, e.g. scrambling}
- 1/4486 . . . {using digital data encryption}
- 1/4493 . . . {Subsequently rendering the image intelligible using a co-operating image, mask or the like}
- 1/46 . . Colour picture communication systems
- 1/465 . . {Conversion of monochrome to colour}
- 1/48 . . Picture signal generators ([for halftone screening H04N 1/52](#))}
- 1/482 . . . {using the same detector device sequentially for different colour components}
- 1/484 . . . . {with sequential colour illumination of the original}
- 1/486 . . . {with separate detectors, each detector being used for one specific colour component}
- 1/488 . . . . {using beam-splitters}
- 1/50 . . Picture reproducers ([for halftone screening H04N 1/52](#))}
- 1/502 . . . {Reproducing the colour component signals dot-sequentially or simultaneously in a single or in adjacent picture-element positions}
- 1/504 . . . {Reproducing the colour component signals line-sequentially}
- 1/506 . . . {Reproducing the colour component signals picture-sequentially, e.g. with reproducing heads spaced apart from one another in the subscanning direction}
- 1/508 . . . . {using the same reproducing head for two or more colour components}
- 1/52 . . Circuits or arrangements for halftone screening
- 1/54 . . Conversion of colour picture signals to a plurality of signals some of which represent particular mixed colours, e.g. for textile printing
- 1/56 . . Processing of colour picture signals ([H04N 1/52 takes precedence](#))}

- 1/58 . . . Edge or detail enhancement; Noise or error suppression, e.g. colour misregistration correction ([H04N 1/62 takes precedence](#))
- 1/60 . . . Colour correction or control ([H04N 1/54 takes precedence](#))
- 1/6002 . . . . {Corrections within particular colour systems}
- 1/6005 . . . . {with luminance or chrominance signals, e.g. LC1C2, HSL or YUV}
- 1/6008 . . . . {with primary colour signals, e.g. RGB or CMY(K)}
- 1/6011 . . . . {with simulation on a subsidiary picture reproducer ([H04N 1/622 takes precedence; matching two or more picture reproducers H04N 1/6052](#))}
- 1/6013 . . . . {by simulating several colour corrected versions of the same image simultaneously on the same picture reproducer}
- 1/6016 . . . . {Conversion to subtractive colour signals}
- 1/6019 . . . . {using look-up tables ([H04N 1/6025 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/6022 . . . . {Generating a fourth subtractive colour signal, e.g. under colour removal, black masking}
- 1/6025 . . . . . {using look-up tables}
- 1/6027 . . . . {Correction or control of colour gradation or colour contrast ([H04N 1/6058 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/603 . . . . {controlled by characteristics of the picture signal generator or the picture reproducer}
- 1/6033 . . . . {using test pattern analysis ([H04N 1/6055 takes precedence](#))}
- 1/6036 . . . . . {involving periodic tests or tests during use of the machine}
- 1/6038 . . . . . {for controlling interaction among colorants}
- 1/6041 . . . . . {for controlling uniformity of color across image area}
- 1/6044 . . . . . {involving a sensor integrated in the machine or otherwise specifically adapted to read the test pattern}
- 1/6047 . . . . . {wherein the test pattern is part of an arbitrary user image}
- 1/605 . . . . . {for controlling ink amount, strike-through, bleeding soakage or the like}
- 1/6052 . . . . . {Matching two or more picture signal generators or two or more picture reproducers}
- 1/6055 . . . . . {using test pattern analysis}
- 1/6058 . . . . {Reduction of colour to a range of reproducible colours, e.g. to ink-reproducible colour gamut}
- 1/6061 . . . . . {involving the consideration or construction of a gamut surface}
- 1/6063 . . . . . {dependent on the contents of the image to be reproduced}
- 1/6066 . . . . . {dependent on the gamut of the image to be reproduced}
- 1/6069 . . . . . {spatially varying within the image}
- 1/6072 . . . . {adapting to different types of images, e.g. characters, graphs, black and white image portions}
- 1/6075 . . . . {Corrections to the hue}
- 1/6077 . . . . {Colour balance, e.g. colour cast correction}
- 1/608 . . . . . {within the L, C1, C2 colour signals}
- 1/6083 . . . . {controlled by factors external to the apparatus}
- 1/6086 . . . . . {by scene illuminant, i.e. conditions at the time of picture capture, e.g. flash, optical filter used, evening, cloud, daylight, artificial lighting, white point measurement, colour temperature}
- 1/6088 . . . . . {by viewing conditions, i.e. conditions at picture output}
- 1/6091 . . . . . {by environmental factors, e.g. temperature or humidity ([H04N 1/6086, H04N 1/6088 take precedence](#))}
- 1/6094 . . . . {depending on characteristics of the input medium, e.g. film type, newspaper}
- 1/6097 . . . . {depending on the characteristics of the output medium, e.g. glossy paper, matt paper, transparency or fabrics}
- 1/62 . . . . Retouching, i.e. modification of isolated colours only or in isolated picture areas only
- 1/622 . . . . . {with simulation on a subsidiary picture reproducer}
- 1/624 . . . . . {Red-eye correction ([control of camera based on recognised facial parts H04N 23/611](#))}
- 1/626 . . . . . {Detection of non-electronic marks, e.g. fluorescent markers}
- 1/628 . . . . . {Memory colours, e.g. skin or sky}
- 1/64 . . . Systems for the transmission or the storage of the colour picture signal; Details therefor, e.g. coding or decoding means therefor ([H04N 19/00 takes precedence](#))
- 1/642 . . . {Adapting to different types of images, e.g. characters, graphs, black and white image portions}
- 1/644 . . . {using a reduced set of representative colours, e.g. each representing a particular range in a colour space}
- 1/646 . . . {Transmitting or storing colour television type signals, e.g. PAL, Lab; Their conversion into additive or subtractive colour signals or *vice versa* therefor ([H04N 1/642, H04N 1/644 take precedence](#))}
- 1/648 . . . {Transmitting or storing the primary (additive or subtractive) colour signals; Compression thereof ([H04N 1/642 - H04N 1/646 take precedence](#))}
- 3/00 Scanning details of television systems; Combination thereof with generation of supply voltages**
- 3/02 . . by optical-mechanical means only ([H04N 3/36 takes precedence](#))
- 3/04 . . having a moving aperture {also apertures covered by lenses}
- 3/06 . . having a moving lens or other refractor
- 3/08 . . having a moving reflector
- 3/09 . . . for electromagnetic radiation in the invisible region, e.g. infrared
- 3/10 . . by means not exclusively optical-mechanical ([H04N 3/36 takes precedence](#))
- 3/12 . . by switched stationary formation of lamps, photocells or light relays
- 3/122 . . . {using cathode rays, e.g. multivision}
- 3/125 . . . {using gas discharges, e.g. plasma}

- 3/127 . . . {using liquid crystals}  
 3/14 . . by means of electrically scanned solid-state devices (for picture generation [H04N 25/00](#))  
 3/15 . . . {for picture signal generation}  
 (Frozen)

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 3/15](#) is no longer used for the classification of documents as of August 1, 2023.

The content of this group is being reclassified into groups [H04N 25/00](#), [H04N 25/10](#), [H04N 25/11](#), [H04N 25/13](#), [H04N 25/131](#), [H04N 25/133](#), [H04N 25/134](#), [H04N 25/135](#), [H04N 25/136](#), [H04N 25/17](#), [H04N 25/20](#), [H04N 25/21](#), [H04N 25/30](#), [H04N 25/70](#), [H04N 25/701](#), [H04N 25/7013](#), [H04N 25/702](#), [H04N 25/703](#), [H04N 25/704](#), [H04N 25/705](#), [H04N 25/706](#), [H04N 25/707](#), [H04N 25/708](#), [H04N 25/709](#) and [H04N 25/79](#).

All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 3/1506 . . . . {with addressing of the image-sensor elements ([H04N 3/1575](#) takes precedence)}

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 3/1506](#) is no longer used for the classification of documents as of August 1, 2023.

The content of this group is being reclassified into groups [H04N 25/76](#), [H04N 25/766](#), [H04N 25/767](#), [H04N 25/768](#), [H04N 25/77](#), [H04N 25/771](#), [H04N 25/772](#), [H04N 25/773](#), [H04N 25/778](#), [H04N 25/779](#), [H04N 25/7795](#) and [H04N 25/78](#).

All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 3/1512 . . . . . {for MOS image-sensors, e.g. MOS-CCD ([H04N 3/1581](#) takes precedence)}

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 3/1512](#) is no longer used for the classification of documents as of August 1, 2023.

The content of this group is being reclassified into groups [H04N 25/76](#), [H04N 25/766](#), [H04N 25/767](#), [H04N 25/768](#), [H04N 25/77](#), [H04N 25/771](#), [H04N 25/772](#), [H04N 25/773](#), [H04N 25/778](#), [H04N 25/779](#), [H04N 25/7795](#) and [H04N 25/78](#).

All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 3/1525 . . . . . {with charge transfer within the image-sensor, e.g. time delay and integration ([H04N 3/1575](#) takes precedence)}

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 3/1525](#) is no longer used for the classification of documents as of August 1, 2023.

The content of this group is being reclassified into groups [H04N 25/71](#), [H04N 25/711](#) and [H04N 25/713](#).

All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 3/155 . . . . . {Control of the image-sensor operation, e.g. image processing within the image-sensor}

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 3/155](#) is no longer used for the classification of documents as of August 1, 2023.

The content of this group is being reclassified into groups [H04N 25/40](#), [H04N 25/41](#), [H04N 25/42](#), [H04N 25/44](#), [H04N 25/441](#), [H04N 25/443](#), [H04N 25/445](#), [H04N 25/447](#), [H04N 25/46](#), [H04N 25/47](#), [H04N 25/48](#), [H04N 25/50](#), [H04N 25/51](#), [H04N 25/53](#), [H04N 25/531](#), [H04N 25/532](#), [H04N 25/533](#), [H04N 25/534](#), [H04N 25/535](#), [H04N 25/57](#), [H04N 25/571](#), [H04N 25/573](#), [H04N 25/575](#), [H04N 25/58](#), [H04N 25/581](#), [H04N 25/583](#), [H04N 25/585](#), [H04N 25/587](#), [H04N 25/589](#) and [H04N 25/59](#).

All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 3/1556 . . . . . {for variable integration time}

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 3/1556](#) is no longer used for the classification of documents as of August 1, 2023.

The content of this group is being reclassified into groups [H04N 25/53](#), [H04N 25/531](#), [H04N 25/532](#), [H04N 25/533](#), [H04N 25/534](#) and [H04N 25/535](#).

All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

3/1562 . . . . . {for selective scanning, e.g. windowing,  
(Frozen) zooming}

#### **WARNING**

Group [H04N 3/1562](#) is no longer used for the classification of documents as of August 1, 2023.

The content of this group is being reclassified into groups [H04N 25/40](#), [H04N 25/41](#), [H04N 25/42](#), [H04N 25/44](#), [H04N 25/441](#), [H04N 25/443](#), [H04N 25/445](#), [H04N 25/447](#) and [H04N 25/46](#).

All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

3/1568 . . . . . {for disturbance correction or prevention  
(Frozen) within the image-sensor, e.g. biasing, blooming, smearing (correction circuits [H04N 25/62](#))}

#### **WARNING**

Group [H04N 3/1568](#) is no longer used for the classification of documents as of August 1, 2023.

The content of this group is being reclassified into groups [H04N 25/60](#), [H04N 25/61](#), [H04N 25/611](#), [H04N 25/615](#), [H04N 25/6153](#), [H04N 25/616](#), [H04N 25/617](#), [H04N 25/618](#), [H04N 25/62](#), [H04N 25/621](#), [H04N 25/622](#), [H04N 25/623](#), [H04N 25/625](#), [H04N 25/626](#), [H04N 25/627](#), [H04N 25/628](#), [H04N 25/63](#), [H04N 25/633](#), [H04N 25/65](#), [H04N 25/67](#), [H04N 25/671](#), [H04N 25/672](#), [H04N 25/673](#), [H04N 25/674](#), [H04N 25/677](#), [H04N 25/68](#), [H04N 25/683](#) and [H04N 25/69](#).

All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

3/1575 . . . . . {Picture signal readout register, e.g. shift  
(Frozen) registers, interline shift registers}

#### **WARNING**

Group [H04N 3/1575](#) is no longer used for the classification of documents as of August 1, 2023.

The content of this group is being reclassified into groups [H04N 25/713](#) and [H04N 25/767](#).

Groups [H04N 3/1575](#), [H04N 25/713](#) and [H04N 25/767](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

3/1581 . . . . . {using linear image-sensor}  
(Frozen)

#### **WARNING**

Group [H04N 3/1581](#) is no longer used for the classification of documents as of August 1, 2023.

The content of this group is being reclassified into groups [H04N 25/701](#) and [H04N 25/7013](#).

Groups [H04N 3/1581](#), [H04N 25/701](#) and [H04N 25/7013](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

3/16 . . by deflecting electron beam in cathode-ray tube {,  
e.g. scanning corrections}

3/18 . . . Generation of supply voltages, in combination  
with electron beam deflecting

3/185 . . . . Maintaining dc voltage constant

3/1853 . . . . . {using regulation in parallel}

3/1856 . . . . . {using regulation in series}

3/19 . . . . Arrangements or assemblies in supply  
circuits for the purpose of withstanding high  
voltages

3/20 . . . Prevention of damage to cathode-ray tubes in  
the event of failure of scanning

3/22 . . . Circuits for controlling dimensions, shape or  
centering of picture on screen

3/223 . . . . Controlling dimensions (by maintaining  
the cathode-ray tube high voltage constant  
[H04N 3/185](#))

3/227 . . . . Centering

3/23 . . . . Distortion correction, e.g. for pincushion  
distortion correction, S-correction

3/233 . . . . . using active elements

3/2335 . . . . . {with calculating means}

3/237 . . . . . using passive elements, e.g. diodes

3/24 . . . Blanking circuits

3/26 . . . Modifications of scanning arrangements to  
improve focusing

3/27 . . . Circuits special to multi-standard receivers

3/28 . . producing multiple scanning, i.e. using more than  
one spot at the same time

3/30 . . otherwise than with constant velocity  
or otherwise than in pattern formed by  
unidirectional, straight, substantially horizontal or  
vertical lines

3/32 . . . Velocity varied in dependence upon picture  
information

3/34 . . . Elemental scanning area oscillated rapidly in  
direction transverse to main scanning direction

3/36 . Scanning of motion picture films, e.g. for telecine

3/38 . . with continuously moving film

3/40 . . with intermittently moving film

3/405 . . . {with film moving only during the field  
blanking interval}

**5/00** Details of television systems (scanning details  
or combination thereof with generation of supply  
voltages [H04N 3/00](#))

5/04 . Synchronising (for television systems using pulse  
code modulation [H04N 7/56](#))

5/05 . . Synchronising circuits with arrangements for  
extending range of synchronisation, e.g. by using  
switching between several time constants



- 5/06 . . . Generation of synchronising signals
  - 5/067 . . . Arrangements or circuits at the transmitter end
  - 5/0675 . . . . {for mixing the synchronising signals with the picture signal or mutually (electrical gates [H03K 17/00](#))}
  - 5/073 . . . . for mutually locking plural sources of synchronising signals, e.g. studios or relay stations
  - 5/0733 . . . . . {for distributing synchronisation pulses to different TV cameras}
  - 5/0736 . . . . . {using digital storage buffer techniques}
  - 5/08 . . . Separation of synchronising signals from picture signals
  - 5/10 . . . Separation of line synchronising signal from frame synchronising signal {or *vice versa*}
  - 5/12 . . . Devices in which the synchronising signals are only operative if a phase difference occurs between synchronising and synchronised scanning devices, e.g. flywheel synchronising
  - 5/123 . . . . {whereby the synchronisation signal directly commands a frequency generator}
  - 5/126 . . . . {whereby the synchronisation signal indirectly commands a frequency generator}
  - 5/14 . . . Picture signal circuitry for video frequency region (cameras or camera modules comprising electronic image sensors, or control thereof [H04N 23/00](#))
  - 5/141 . . . {Beam current control means}
  - 5/142 . . . {Edging; Contouring}
  - 5/144 . . . {Movement detection (for video coding [H04N 19/503](#); analysis of motion in general [G06T 7/20](#))}
  - 5/145 . . . . {Movement estimation (for video coding [H04N 19/51](#))}
  - 5/147 . . . {Scene change detection}
  - 5/148 . . . {Video amplifiers (amplifiers in general [H03F](#))}
  - 5/16 . . . Circuitry for reinsertion of dc and slowly varying components of signal; Circuitry for preservation of black or white level
  - 5/165 . . . . {to maintain the black level constant}
  - 5/18 . . . . by means of "clamp" circuit operated by switching circuit
  - 5/185 . . . . . {for the black level}
  - 5/20 . . . Circuitry for controlling amplitude response
  - 5/202 . . . . Gamma control (circuits for controlling camera response irrespective of the scene brightness [H04N 23/82](#))
- WARNING**
- Group [H04N 5/202](#) is impacted by reclassification into group [H04N 23/82](#).  
Groups [H04N 5/202](#) and [H04N 23/82](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.
- 5/205 . . . . for correcting amplitude versus frequency characteristic
  - 5/208 . . . . . for compensating for attenuation of high frequency components, e.g. crispening, aperture distortion correction
  - 5/21 . . . Circuitry for suppressing or minimising disturbance, e.g. moiré or halo
  - 5/211 . . . . {Ghost signal cancellation ([H04N 23/81](#) takes precedence)}
  - 5/213 . . . . Circuitry for suppressing or minimising impulsive noise (for suppressing or minimising disturbance in image signal generation [H04N 23/81](#))
  - 5/222 . . . Studio circuitry; Studio devices; Studio equipment (cameras or camera modules comprising electronic image sensors, or control thereof [H04N 23/00](#))
  - 5/2222 . . . {Prompting}
  - 5/2224 . . . {related to virtual studio applications}
  - 5/2226 . . . . {Determination of depth image, e.g. for foreground/background separation (determining depth by image analysis in general [G06T 7/50](#); segmentation by image analysis in general [G06T 7/10](#))}
  - 5/2228 . . . {Video assist systems used in motion picture production, e.g. video cameras connected to viewfinders of motion picture cameras or related video signal processing}
  - 5/253 . . . Picture signal generating by scanning motion picture films or slide opaques, e.g. for telecine (scanning details therefor [H04N 3/36](#) ; standard conversion therefor [H04N 7/0112](#))
  - 5/257 . . . Picture signal generators using flying-spot scanners ([H04N 5/253](#) takes precedence)
  - 5/262 . . . Studio circuits, e.g. for mixing, switching-over, change of character of image, other special effects ; Cameras specially adapted for the electronic generation of special effects}
  - 5/2621 . . . . {Cameras specially adapted for the electronic generation of special effects during image pickup, e.g. digital cameras, camcorders, video cameras having integrated special effects capability}
  - 5/2622 . . . . {Signal amplitude transition in the zone between image portions, e.g. soft edges}
  - 5/2624 . . . . {for obtaining an image which is composed of whole input images, e.g. splitscreen}
  - 5/2625 . . . . {for obtaining an image which is composed of images from a temporal image sequence, e.g. for a stroboscopic effect (sequence generated by event triggered capturing [H04N 7/188](#))}
  - 5/2627 . . . . . {for providing spin image effect, 3D stop motion effect or temporal freeze effect ([2D image animation in general G06T 13/80](#))}
  - 5/2628 . . . . {Alteration of picture size, shape, position or orientation, e.g. zooming, rotation, rolling, perspective, translation}
  - 5/265 . . . . Mixing
  - 5/268 . . . . Signal distribution or switching
  - 5/272 . . . . Means for inserting a foreground image in a background image, i.e. inlay, outlay
  - 5/2723 . . . . . {Insertion of virtual advertisement; Replacing advertisements physical present in the scene by virtual advertisement (data processing systems or methods specially adapted for marketing [G06Q 30/02](#))}
  - 2005/2726 . . . . . {for simulating a person's appearance, e.g. hair style, glasses, clothes}
  - 5/275 . . . . . Generation of keying signals
  - 5/278 . . . . Subtitling
  - 5/28 . . . Mobile studios

- 5/30 . . Transforming light or analogous information into electric information (scanning details [H04N 3/00](#); cameras or camera modules comprising electronic image sensors, or control thereof [H04N 23/00](#); circuitry of solid-state image sensors [SSIS] or control thereof [H04N 25/00](#))

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 5/30](#) is impacted by reclassification into group [H04N 25/00](#).

Groups [H04N 5/30](#) and [H04N 25/00](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 5/32 . . Transforming X-rays (cameras or camera modules for generating image signals from X-rays [H04N 23/30](#); circuitry of SSIS for transforming X-rays into image signals [H04N 25/30](#))

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 5/32](#) is impacted by reclassification into groups [H04N 23/30](#) and [H04N 25/30](#).

Groups [H04N 5/32](#), [H04N 23/30](#) and [H04N 25/30](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 5/3205 . . . {using subtraction imaging techniques}  
5/321 . . . with video transmission of fluoroscopic images

**WARNING**

Not complete, for documents published prior to June 1996 see also [H04N 5/32](#)

- 5/325 . . . . Image enhancement, e.g. by subtraction techniques using polyenergetic X-rays

**WARNING**

Not complete, for documents published prior to June 1996 see also [H04N 5/32](#)

- 5/33 . . Transforming infrared radiation (cameras or camera modules for generating image signals from infrared radiation [H04N 23/20](#); circuitry of SSIS for transforming infrared radiation into image signals [H04N 25/20](#))

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 5/33](#) is impacted by reclassification into groups [H04N 23/20](#), [H04N 23/21](#), [H04N 23/23](#), [H04N 25/20](#) and [H04N 25/21](#).

All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 5/38 . . Transmitter circuitry {for the transmission of television signals according to analogue transmission standards} ([H04N 5/14](#) takes precedence)  
5/40 . . Modulation circuits  
5/42 . . for transmitting at will black-and-white or colour signals  
5/44 . . Receiver circuitry {for the reception of television signals according to analogue transmission standards} ([H04N 5/14](#) takes precedence)

- 5/4446 . . {IF amplifier circuits specially adapted for B&W TV (RF amplifiers in general [H03F 3/189](#))}  
5/4448 . . {for frame-grabbing}  
5/445 . . for displaying additional information ([H04N 5/50](#) takes precedence)  
5/44504 . . . {Circuit details of the additional information generator, e.g. details of the character or graphics signal generator, overlay mixing circuits}  
5/45 . . . Picture in picture {, e.g. displaying simultaneously another television channel in a region of the screen}  
5/455 . . Demodulation-circuits  
5/46 . . for receiving on more than one standard at will (deflecting circuits of multi-standard receivers [H04N 3/27](#))  
5/50 . . Tuning indicators; Automatic tuning control  
5/505 . . . {Invisible or silent tuning}  
5/52 . . Automatic gain control  
5/53 . . . Keyed automatic gain control  
5/54 . . . for positively-modulated picture signals ([H04N 5/53](#) takes precedence)  
5/56 . . . for negatively-modulated picture signals ([H04N 5/53](#) takes precedence)  
5/57 . . Control of contrast or brightness  
5/58 . . . in dependence upon ambient light  
5/59 . . . in dependence upon beam current of cathode ray tube  
5/60 . . for the sound signals  
5/602 . . . {for digital sound signals}  
5/605 . . . . {according to the NICAM system}  
5/607 . . . {for more than one sound signal, e.g. stereo, multilanguages ([H04N 5/602](#) takes precedence)}  
5/62 . . . Inter-carrier circuits, i.e. heterodyning sound and vision carriers {([H04N 5/607](#) takes precedence)}  
5/63 . . Generation or supply of power specially adapted for television receivers  
5/64 . . Constructional details of receivers, e.g. cabinets or dust covers (furniture aspects {of television cabinets} [A47B 81/06](#))  
5/642 . . {Disposition of sound reproducers}  
5/645 . . Mounting of picture tube on chassis or in housing  
5/65 . . Holding-devices for protective discs or for picture masks  
5/655 . . Construction or mounting of chassis, e.g. for varying the elevation of the tube  
5/66 . . Transforming electric information into light information (scanning details [H04N 3/00](#))  
5/68 . . Circuit details for cathode-ray display tubes {(deviation circuits [H04N 3/16](#))}  
5/70 . . Circuit details for electroluminescent devices  
5/72 . . Modifying the appearance of television pictures by optical filters or diffusing screens

5/74	. . . . . Projection arrangements for image reproduction, e.g. using eidophor	5/78266	. . . . . {using more than one track for the recording of one television field or frame, i.e. segmented recording}
	<b>WARNING</b>	5/7828	. . . . . involving transversal scanning of the magnetic tape
	<a href="#">H04N 5/74</a> and subgroups are no longer used for the classification of new documents as from October 1, 2008. The backlog is being continuously reclassified to subgroups of <a href="#">H04N 9/31</a>	5/783	. . . . . Adaptations for reproducing at a rate different from the recording rate
5/7408	. . . {Direct viewing projectors, e.g. an image displayed on a video CRT or LCD display being projected on a screen}	5/784	. . . . . on a sheet
5/7416	. . . {involving the use of a spatial light modulator, e.g. a light valve, controlled by a video signal}	5/80	. . . using electrostatic recording ( <a href="#">H04N 5/91</a> takes precedence)
5/7425	. . . {the modulator being a dielectric deformable layer controlled by an electron beam, e.g. eidophor projector}	5/805	. . . . . {on discs or drums}
2005/7433	. . . . . {Control circuits therefor}	5/82	. . . using deformable thermoplastic recording medium
5/7441	. . . {the modulator being an array of liquid crystal cells}	5/83	. . . . . on disks or drums
2005/745	. . . . . {Control circuits therefor}	5/84	. . . using optical recording ( <a href="#">H04N 5/80</a> , <a href="#">H04N 5/89</a> , <a href="#">H04N 5/91</a> take precedence)
5/7458	. . . {the modulator being an array of deformable mirrors, e.g. digital micromirror device [DMD]}	5/843	. . . . . {on film}
2005/7466	. . . . . {Control circuits therefor}	5/846	. . . . . {the film moving intermittently}
5/7475	. . . {Constructional details of television projection apparatus}	5/85	. . . . . on discs or drums
2005/7483	. . . . . {for colour television}	5/87	. . . Producing a motion picture film from a television signal {(standard conversion therefor <a href="#">H04N 7/0112</a> )}
5/7491	. . . . . {of head mounted projectors}	5/89	. . . using holographic recording ( <a href="#">H04N 5/91</a> takes precedence)
5/76	. . . Television signal recording	5/90	. . . . . on discs or drums
5/7605	. . . {on discs or drums ( <a href="#">H04N 5/781</a> , <a href="#">H04N 5/805</a> , <a href="#">H04N 5/83</a> , <a href="#">H04N 5/85</a> take precedence)}	5/903	. . . using variable electrical capacitive recording ( <a href="#">H04N 5/91</a> takes precedence)
5/765	. . . Interface circuits between an apparatus for recording and another apparatus	5/907	. . . using static stores, e.g. storage tubes or semiconductor memories ( <a href="#">H04N 5/91</a> takes precedence)
5/77	. . . . . between a recording apparatus and a television camera	5/91	. . . Television signal processing therefor
5/772	. . . . . {the recording apparatus and the television camera being placed in the same enclosure}	5/911	. . . . . for the suppression of noise {( <a href="#">H04N 5/932</a> takes precedence)}
5/775	. . . . . between a recording apparatus and a television receiver	5/913	. . . . . for scrambling {; for copy protection}
5/7755	. . . . . {the recorder being connected to, or coupled with, the antenna of the television receiver}	2005/91307	. . . . . {by adding a copy protection signal to the video signal}
5/78	. . . using magnetic recording ( <a href="#">H04N 5/91</a> takes precedence {; mechanical details in so far as non typical for television circuitry <a href="#">G11B 5/00</a> )}	2005/91314	. . . . . {the copy protection signal being a pulse signal inserted in blanking intervals of the video signal, e.g. pseudo-AGC pulses, pseudo-sync pulses}
5/7805	. . . . . {Recording or playback not using inductive heads, e.g. magneto-optical, thermomagnetic, magnetostrictive, galvanomagnetic (electrostatic recording <a href="#">H04N 5/80</a> , photographic recording <a href="#">H04N 5/84</a> )}	2005/91321	. . . . . {the copy protection signal being a copy protection control signal, e.g. a record inhibit signal}
5/781	. . . . . on disks or drums	2005/91328	. . . . . {the copy protection signal being a copy management signal, e.g. a copy generation management signal [CGMS]}
5/782	. . . . . on tape	2005/91335	. . . . . {the copy protection signal being a watermark}
5/78206	. . . . . {Recording using a special track configuration, e.g. crossing, overlapping}	2005/91342	. . . . . {the copy protection signal being an authentication signal}
5/78213	. . . . . {involving recording in different depths of the magnetic tape}	2005/9135	. . . . . {by superimposing the spectrally spread copy protection signal onto the video signal}
5/7822	. . . . . with stationary magnetic heads	2005/91357	. . . . . {by modifying the video signal}
5/7824	. . . . . with rotating magnetic heads	2005/91364	. . . . . {the video signal being scrambled}
5/7826	. . . . . involving helical scanning of the magnetic tape	2005/91371	. . . . . {the video color burst signal being modified}
5/78263	. . . . . {for recording on tracks inclined relative to the direction of movement of the tape}	2005/91378	. . . . . {the video line number being modulated}
		2005/91385	. . . . . {the video frame number being modulated}
		2005/91392	. . . . . {using means for preventing making copies of projected video images}
		5/915	. . . . . for field- or frame-skip recording or reproducing

- 5/9155 . . . . {with sound multiplexing}
- 5/917 . . . for bandwidth reduction
- 5/919 . . . . by dividing samples or signal segments, e.g. television lines, among a plurality of recording channels
- 5/92 . . . Transformation of the television signal for recording, e.g. modulation, frequency changing; Inverse transformation for playback
- 5/9201 . . . . {involving the multiplexing of an additional signal and the video signal}
- 5/9202 . . . . . {the additional signal being a sound signal ([H04N 5/9155](#), [H04N 5/92](#) take precedence)}
- 5/9203 . . . . . {using time division multiplex}
- 5/9204 . . . . . {using frequency division multiplex}
- 5/9205 . . . . . {the additional signal being at least another television signal}
- 5/9206 . . . . . {the additional signal being a character code signal}
- 5/9207 . . . . . {for teletext}
- 5/9208 . . . . . {involving the use of subcodes}
- 5/921 . . . . by recording or reproducing the baseband signal
- 5/923 . . . . using preemphasis of the signal before modulation and deemphasis of the signal after demodulation {(volume compression or expansion in amplifiers in general [H03G 7/00](#))}
- 5/926 . . . . by pulse code modulation ([H04N 5/919](#) takes precedence)
- 5/9261 . . . . . {involving data reduction}
- 5/9262 . . . . . {using predictive coding}
- 5/9264 . . . . . {using transform coding}
- 5/9265 . . . . . {with processing of the sound signal}
- 5/9267 . . . . . {using time division multiplex of the PCM audio and PCM video signals}
- 5/9268 . . . . . . {with insertion of the PCM audio signals in the vertical blanking interval of the PCM video signal}
- 5/928 . . . . the sound signal being pulse code modulated and recorded in time division multiplex with the modulated video signal
- 5/93 . . . Regeneration of the television signal or of selected parts thereof
- 5/9305 . . . . {involving the mixing of the reproduced video signal with a non-recorded signal, e.g. a text signal}
- 5/931 . . . . for restoring the level of the reproduced signal
- 5/9315 . . . . . {the level control being frequency dependent ([H04N 5/923](#) takes precedence)}
- 5/932 . . . . Regeneration of analogue synchronisation signals
- 5/935 . . . . Regeneration of digital synchronisation signals
- 5/937 . . . . by assembling picture element blocks in an intermediate store
- 5/94 . . . . Signal drop-out compensation
- 5/945 . . . . . for signals recorded by pulse code modulation
- 5/95 . . . . Time-base error compensation {(H04N 5/932 takes precedence)}
- 5/953 . . . . . by using an analogue memory, e.g. a CCD shift register, the delay of which is controlled by a voltage controlled oscillator
- 5/956 . . . . . by using a digital memory with independent write-in and read-out clock generators
- 7/00** **Television systems** (details [H04N 3/00](#), [H04N 5/00](#); methods or arrangements, for coding, decoding, compressing or decompressing digital video signals [H04N 19/00](#); selective content distribution [H04N 21/00](#))
- 7/002 . {Special television systems not provided for by [H04N 7/007](#) - [H04N 7/18](#) (still pictures via a television channel [H04N 1/00098](#))}
- 7/005 . . {using at least one opto-electrical conversion device}
- 7/007 . {Systems with supplementary picture signal insertion during a portion of the active part of a television signal, e.g. during top and bottom lines in a HDTV letter-box system}
- 7/01 . Conversion of standards {, e.g. involving analogue television standards or digital television standards processed at pixel level}
- 7/0102 . . {involving the resampling of the incoming video signal}
- 7/0105 . . {using a storage device with different write and read speed}
- 7/0107 . . . {using beam gun storage}
- 7/011 . . . {using magnetic recording}
- 7/0112 . . {one of the standards corresponding to a cinematograph film standard}
- 7/0115 . . . {with details on the detection of a particular field or frame pattern in the incoming video signal, e.g. 3:2 pull-down pattern}
- 7/0117 . . {involving conversion of the spatial resolution of the incoming video signal (for graphics images [G09G 2340/0407](#))}
- 7/012 . . . {Conversion between an interlaced and a progressive signal (for graphics images [G09G 2310/0229](#))}
- 7/0122 . . . {the input and the output signals having different aspect ratios}
- 7/0125 . . {one of the standards being a high definition standard}
- 7/0127 . . {by changing the field or frame frequency of the incoming video signal, e.g. frame rate converter}
- 7/013 . . . {the incoming video signal comprising different parts having originally different frame rate, e.g. video and graphics}
- 7/0132 . . . {the field or frame frequency of the incoming video signal being multiplied by a positive integer, e.g. for flicker reduction}
- 7/0135 . . {involving interpolation processes (interpolation-based image scaling [G06T 3/4007](#); interpolation for video coding [H04N 19/587](#), [H04N 19/59](#))}
- 7/0137 . . . {dependent on presence/absence of motion, e.g. of motion zones ([H04N 7/014](#) takes precedence; movement detection in television signals [H04N 5/144](#))}
- 7/014 . . . {involving the use of motion vectors (motion estimation and compensation in video coding [H04N 19/51](#))}



- 7/0142 . . . {the interpolation being edge adaptive (edge detection in television signals [H04N 5/142](#); edge-driven scaling [G06T 3/403](#))}
- 7/0145 . . . {the interpolation being class adaptive, i.e. it uses the information of class which is determined for a pixel based upon certain characteristics of the neighbouring pixels}
- 7/0147 . . . {the interpolation using an indication of film mode or an indication of a specific pattern, e.g. 3:2 pull-down pattern}
- 7/015 . . High-definition television systems
- 7/0152 . . {using spatial or temporal subsampling}
- 7/0155 . . . {using pixel blocks}
- 7/0157 . . . . {with motion estimation, e.g. involving the use of motion vectors}
- 7/025 . . Systems for the transmission of digital non-picture data, e.g. of text during the active part of a television frame {(transmission of digital non-picture data during the vertical blanking interval only [H04N 7/088](#))}
- 7/0255 . . {Display systems therefor}
- 7/03 . . Subscription systems therefor
- 7/035 . . Circuits for the digital non-picture data signal, e.g. for slicing of the data signal, for regeneration of the data-clock signal, for error detection or correction of the data signal
- 7/0352 . . . {for regeneration of the clock signal}
- 7/0355 . . . {for discrimination of the binary level of the digital data, e.g. amplitude slicers}
- 7/0357 . . . {for error detection or correction}
- 7/04 . . Systems for the transmission of one television signal, i.e. both picture and sound, by a single carrier {(H04N 7/084, H04N 7/087 take precedence)}
- 7/045 . . the carrier being frequency modulated
- 7/06 . . Systems for the simultaneous transmission of one television signal, i.e. both picture and sound, by more than one carrier {(H04N 7/084, H04N 7/087 take precedence)}
- 7/063 . . {Simultaneous transmission of separate parts of one picture}
- 7/066 . . {the carriers being allocated to more than one television channel}
- 7/08 . . Systems for the simultaneous or sequential transmission of more than one television signal, e.g. additional information signals, the signals occupying wholly or partially the same frequency band {, e.g. by time division ([H04N 7/007](#) takes precedence)}
- 7/0803 . . {using frequency interleaving, e.g. with precision offset}
- 7/0806 . . {the signals being two or more video signals ([H04N 7/0803](#), [H04N 7/081](#) take precedence)}
- 7/081 . . the additional information signals being transmitted by means of a subcarrier
- 7/083 . . with signal insertion during the vertical and the horizontal blanking interval {, e.g. MAC data signals}
- 7/084 . . with signal insertion during the horizontal blanking interval {only}
- 7/085 . . . the inserted signal being digital
- 7/0855 . . . . {the signal being time-compressed before its insertion and subsequently decompressed at reception}
- 7/087 . . with signal insertion during the vertical blanking interval {only}
- 7/088 . . . the inserted signal being digital
- 7/0881 . . . . {the signal being time-compressed before its insertion and subsequently decompressed at reception}
- 7/0882 . . . . {for the transmission of character code signals, e.g. for teletext (circuits for the digital non-picture data signal [H04N 7/035](#))}
- 7/0884 . . . . {for the transmission of additional display-information, e.g. menu for programme or channel selection}
- 7/0885 . . . . . {for the transmission of subtitles}
- 7/0887 . . . . {for the transmission of programme or channel identifying signals}
- 7/0888 . . . . {Subscription systems therefor}
- 7/10 . . Adaptations for transmission by electrical cable ([H04N 7/12](#) takes precedence)
- 7/102 . . {Circuits therefor, e.g. noise reducers, equalisers, amplifiers ([H04N 7/108](#) takes precedence)}
- 7/104 . . . {Switchers or splitters}
- 7/106 . . {for domestic distribution}
- 7/108 . . {the cable being constituted by a pair of wires}
- 7/12 . . Systems in which the television signal is transmitted via one channel or a plurality of parallel channels, the bandwidth of each channel being less than the bandwidth of the television signal ([H04N 7/24](#) takes precedence)
- 7/122 . . {involving expansion and subsequent compression of a signal segment, e.g. a frame, a line}
- 7/125 . . . {the signal segment being a picture element}
- 7/127 . . {Systems in which different parts of the picture signal frequency band are individually processed, e.g. suppressed, transposed}
- 7/14 . . Systems for two-way working {(H04N 7/12, H04N 7/173 take precedence)}
- 7/141 . . {between two video terminals, e.g. videophone (telephonic communication systems combined with television receiver for reception of entertainment or information matter [H04M 11/085](#))}
- 7/142 . . . {Constructional details of the terminal equipment, e.g. arrangements of the camera and the display}
- 7/144 . . . . {camera and display on the same optical axis, e.g. optically multiplexing the camera and display for eye to eye contact}
- 2007/145 . . . . {Handheld terminals}
- 7/147 . . . {Communication arrangements, e.g. identifying the communication as a video-communication, intermediate storage of the signals (selecting [H04Q](#))}
- 7/148 . . . {Interfacing a video terminal to a particular transmission medium, e.g. ISDN}
- 7/15 . . Conference systems
- 7/152 . . . {Multipoint control units therefor}
- 7/155 . . . {involving storage of or access to video conference sessions (tracking arrangements for later retrieval of a computer conference content or participants activities [H04L 12/1831](#))}
- 7/157 . . . {defining a virtual conference space and using avatars or agents (computer conference optimisation or adaptation [H04L 12/1827](#))}

7/16	. Analogue secrecy systems; Analogue subscription systems	7/186	. . . { Video door telephones }
7/161	. . { Constructional details of the subscriber equipment ( <a href="#">H04N 7/164 takes precedence</a> ) }	7/188	. . { Capturing isolated or intermittent images triggered by the occurrence of a predetermined event, e.g. an object reaching a predetermined position (signal generation from motion picture films <a href="#">H04N 5/253</a> ) }
7/162	. . { Authorising the user terminal, e.g. by paying; Registering the use of a subscription channel, e.g. billing }	7/20	. Adaptations for transmission via a GHz frequency band, e.g. via satellite
7/163	. . . { by receiver means only }	7/22	. Adaptations for optical transmission
7/164	. . . . { Coin-freed apparatus }	7/24	. Systems for the transmission of television signals using pulse code modulation ( <a href="#">H04N 21/00 takes precedence</a> )
7/165	. . . { Centralised control of user terminal (subsequent to an upstream request signal <a href="#">H04N 7/17345</a> ); Registering at central (by two-way working <a href="#">H04N 7/17309</a> ) }	2007/243	. . { Bitstream control arrangements }
7/166	. . { Passage/non-passage of the television signal, e.g. jamming, band suppression (scrambling and descrambling <a href="#">H04N 7/167</a> ) }	2007/246	. . { Bitstream transport arrangements }
7/167	. . Systems rendering the television signal unintelligible and subsequently intelligible	7/52	. . Systems for transmission of a pulse code modulated video signal with one or more other pulse code modulated signals, e.g. an audio signal or a synchronizing signal (assembling of a multiplex stream by combining a video stream with other content or additional data, remultiplexing of multiplex streams, insertion of stuffing bits into the multiplex stream, assembling of a packetised elementary stream at server side <a href="#">H04N 21/236</a> ; disassembling of a multiplex stream, remultiplexing of multiplex streams, extraction or processing of Service Information, disassembling of packetised elementary stream at client side <a href="#">H04N 21/434</a> )
7/1675	. . . { Providing digital key or authorisation information for generation or regeneration of the scrambling sequence (pseudo-random number generators in general <a href="#">G06F 7/58</a> ) }	7/54	. . . the signals being synchronous { ( <a href="#">H04N 21/23602</a> , <a href="#">H04N 21/23614</a> , <a href="#">H04N 21/2365</a> , <a href="#">H04N 21/2368</a> , <a href="#">H04N 21/4341</a> , <a href="#">H04N 21/4342</a> , <a href="#">H04N 21/4347</a> , <a href="#">H04N 21/4348</a> take precedence) }
7/169	. . . Systems operating in the time domain of the television signal	7/56	. . . . Synchronising systems therefor
7/1693	. . . . { by displacing synchronisation signals relative to active picture signals or <i>vice versa</i> }	9/00	<b>Details of colour television systems</b>
7/1696	. . . . { by changing or reversing the order of active picture signal portions }	9/01	. Circuitry for demodulating colour component signals modulated spatially by colour striped filters by phase separation
7/171	. . . Systems operating in the amplitude domain of the television signal	9/03	. Circuitry for demodulating colour component signals modulated spatially by colour striped filters by frequency separation
7/1713	. . . . { by modifying synchronisation signals }	9/11	. Scanning of colour motion picture films, e.g. for telecine
7/1716	. . . . { by inverting the polarity of active picture signal portions }	9/12	. Picture reproducers ( <a href="#">H04N 9/11 takes precedence</a> )
7/173	. . with two-way working, e.g. subscriber sending a programme selection signal	9/14	. . using optical-mechanical scanning means only
7/17309	. . . { Transmission or handling of upstream communications }	9/16	. . using cathode ray tubes ( <a href="#">H04N 9/11 takes precedence</a> )
7/17318	. . . . { Direct or substantially direct transmission and handling of requests }	9/18	. . . using separate electron beams for the primary colour signals ( <a href="#">H04N 9/27 takes precedence</a> )
7/17327	. . . . { with deferred transmission or handling of upstream communications }		<b>WARNING</b>
7/17336	. . . . { Handling of requests in head-ends }		This subgroup is no longer used for the classification of new documents as from 1.02.2012 and the backlog of this subgroup is being continuously reclassified to <a href="#">H04L 9/065</a> and subgroups
7/17345	. . . { Control of the passage of the selected programme }	9/20	. . . . with more than one beam in a tube
7/17354	. . . . { in an intermediate station common to a plurality of user terminals }	9/22	. . . using the same beam for more than one primary colour information ( <a href="#">H04N 9/27 takes precedence</a> )
7/17363	. . . . { at or near the user terminal }	9/24	. . . . using means, integral with, or external to, the tube, for producing signal indicating instantaneous beam position
2007/17372	. . . { the upstream transmission being initiated or timed by a signal from upstream of the user terminal }		
2007/17381	. . . { the upstream transmission being initiated by the user terminal }		
2007/1739	. . . { the upstream communication being transmitted via a separate link, e.g. telephone line }		
7/18	. Closed-circuit television [CCTV] systems, i.e. systems in which the video signal is not broadcast		
7/181	. . { for receiving images from a plurality of remote sources }		
7/183	. . { for receiving images from a single remote source }		
7/185	. . . { from a mobile camera, e.g. for remote control }		

- 9/26 . . . . using electron-optical colour selection means, e.g. line grid, deflection means in or near the gun or near the phosphor screen
- 9/27 . . . . with variable depth of penetration of electron beam into the luminescent layer, e.g. penetrators
- 9/28 . . . . Arrangements for convergence or focusing
- 9/285 . . . . using quadrupole lenses
- 9/29 . . . . using demagnetisation or compensation of external magnetic fields
- 9/30 . . using solid-state colour display devices
- 9/31 . . Projection devices for colour picture display {, e.g. using electronic spatial light modulators [ESLM]}
- 9/3102 . . . {using two-dimensional electronic spatial light modulators (micromechanical modulators as such G02B 26/0833; liquid crystal modulators as such G02F 1/13)}
- 9/3105 . . . . {for displaying all colours simultaneously, e.g. by using two or more electronic spatial light modulators (simultaneous projection in colour photography G03B 33/10; beam splitting or combining systems per se G02B 27/10)}
- 9/3108 . . . . {by using a single electronic spatial light modulator}
- 9/3111 . . . . {for displaying the colours sequentially, e.g. by using sequentially activated light sources (sequential projection in colour photography G03B 33/08)}
- 9/3114 . . . . {by using a sequential colour filter producing one colour at a time}
- 9/3117 . . . . {by using a sequential colour filter producing two or more colours simultaneously, e.g. by creating scrolling colour bands}
- 9/312 . . . . {Driving therefor (driving of electronic spatial light modulators in displays other than projection devices G09G 3/34, G09G 3/36; control of liquid crystal elements G02F 1/133; control of micromechanical modulators G02B 26/08)}
- 9/3123 . . . . {using pulse width modulation}
- 9/3126 . . . . {for spatial light modulators in series}
- 9/3129 . . . {scanning a light beam on the display screen (scanning a light beam on a screen in displays other than projection devices G09G 3/02; scanning systems in general G02B 26/10; projectors using laser light sources in general H04N 9/3161)}
- 9/3132 . . . . {using one-dimensional electronic spatial light modulators}
- 9/3135 . . . . {Driving therefor}
- 9/3138 . . . {using arrays of modulated light sources (electroluminescent display devices G09G 3/30)}
- 9/3141 . . . {Constructional details thereof (details not peculiar to the presence of an electronic spatial light modulator G03B 21/14)}
- 9/3144 . . . . {Cooling systems (cooling of liquid crystal cells in general G02F 1/133382; cooling of projectors not peculiar to the presence of an electronic spatial light modulator G03B 21/16)}
- 9/3147 . . . . {Multi-projection systems (displays in general H04N 9/12; video walls G06F 3/1446, G09G 2300/026)}
- 9/315 . . . . {Modulator illumination systems (general applications of lighting devices F21V; general optical systems G02B; lamp houses for projectors not peculiar to the presence of an electronic spatial light modulator G03B 21/20)}
- 9/3152 . . . . . {for shaping the light beam (beam shaping per se G02B 27/09)}
- 9/3155 . . . . . {for controlling the light source (light source control per se H05B 35/00 – H05B 47/00; control of an illumination source for displays in general G09G 3/3406)}
- 9/3158 . . . . . {for controlling the spectrum}
- 9/3161 . . . . . {using laser light sources (using laser beams scanning the display screen H04N 9/3129)}
- 9/3164 . . . . . {using multiple light sources}
- 9/3167 . . . . . {for polarizing the light beam (polarizing optical systems per se G02B 27/28)}
- 9/317 . . . . {Convergence or focusing systems (electronic adjustment of convergence H04N 9/3185; convergence or focusing arrangements for cathode ray tubes H04N 9/28; means for automatic focusing of projectors not peculiar to the presence of an electronic spatial light modulator G03B 21/53)}
- 9/3173 . . . . {wherein the projection device is specially adapted for enhanced portability}
- 9/3176 . . . . . {wherein the projection device is incorporated in a camera (details of cameras adapted for combination with a projector not peculiar to the presence of an electronic spatial light modulator G03B 17/54)}
- 9/3179 . . . {Video signal processing therefor}
- 9/3182 . . . . {Colour adjustment, e.g. white balance, shading or gamut (white balance per se H04N 9/73; control of amplitude of colour signals H04N 9/68; colour control circuits for displays in general G09G 5/02, G09G 3/2003, G09G 3/3607)}
- 9/3185 . . . . {Geometric adjustment, e.g. keystone or convergence (optical or mechanical adjustment of convergence H04N 9/317; using scanning means H04N 3/22; optical or mechanical adjustments of projectors not peculiar to the presence of an electronic spatial light modulator G03B 21/14)}
- 9/3188 . . . . {Scale or resolution adjustment (scaling in general G06T 3/40; resolution modifying circuits for displays in general G09G 5/391)}
- 9/3191 . . . {Testing thereof (testing of displays in general G09G 3/006)}
- 9/3194 . . . . {including sensor feedback}
- 9/3197 . . . {using light modulating optical valves}
- 9/43 . Conversion of monochrome picture signals to colour picture signals for colour picture display
- 9/44 . Colour synchronisation
- 9/45 . . Generation or recovery of colour sub-carriers

- 9/455 . . Generation of colour burst signals; Insertion of colour burst signals in colour picture signals or separation of colour burst signals from colour picture signals ([H04N 9/45 takes precedence](#))
- 9/465 . . Synchronisation of the PAL-switch
- 9/47 . . for sequential signals
- 9/475 . . for mutually locking different synchronisation sources
- 9/64 . Circuits for processing colour signals ([H04N 9/77 takes precedence](#); camera processing pipelines for processing colour signals [H04N 23/84](#))

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 9/64](#) is impacted by reclassification into group [H04N 23/84](#).

Groups [H04N 9/64](#) and [H04N 23/84](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 9/641 . . {Multi-purpose receivers, e.g. for auxiliary information ([H04N 9/642 takes precedence](#))}
- 9/642 . . {Multi-standard receivers}
- 9/643 . . {Hue control means, e.g. flesh tone control}
- 9/645 . . {Beam current control means}
- 9/646 . . {for image enhancement, e.g. vertical detail restoration, cross-colour elimination, contour correction, chrominance trapping filters}
- 9/647 . . {I.F amplifiers, (amplifiers in general [H03F](#))}
- 9/648 . . {Video amplifiers}
- 9/65 . . for synchronous modulators
- 9/66 . . for synchronous demodulators
- 9/67 . . for matrixing (camera processing pipelines for matrixing of colour signals [H04N 23/85](#))

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 9/67](#) is impacted by reclassification into group [H04N 23/85](#).

Groups [H04N 9/67](#) and [H04N 23/85](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 9/68 . . for controlling the amplitude of colour signals, e.g. automatic chroma control circuits ([H04N 9/71](#), [H04N 9/73 take precedence](#); camera processing pipelines for controlling the colour saturation of colour signals [H04N 23/86](#))

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 9/68](#) is impacted by reclassification into group [H04N 23/86](#).

Groups [H04N 9/68](#) and [H04N 23/86](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 9/69 . . . for modifying the colour signals by gamma correction (controlling camera response for colour signals [H04N 23/83](#))

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 9/69](#) is impacted by reclassification into group [H04N 23/83](#).

Groups [H04N 9/69](#) and [H04N 23/83](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 9/70 . . for colour killing

- 9/71 . . . combined with colour gain control
- 9/72 . . for reinsertion of DC and slowly varying components of colour signals (camera processing pipelines for reinsertion of DC or slowly varying components of colour signals [H04N 23/87](#))

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 9/72](#) is impacted by reclassification into group [H04N 23/87](#).

Groups [H04N 9/72](#) and [H04N 23/87](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 9/73 . . Colour balance circuits, e.g. white balance circuits or colour temperature control (camera processing pipelines for colour balance [H04N 23/88](#))

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 9/73](#) is impacted by reclassification into group [H04N 23/88](#).

Groups [H04N 9/73](#) and [H04N 23/88](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 9/74 . . for obtaining special effects ([H04N 9/65 - H04N 9/73 take precedence](#))
- 9/75 . . . Chroma key
- 9/76 . . . for mixing of colour signals ([H04N 9/75 takes precedence](#))
- 9/77 . Circuits for processing the brightness signal and the chrominance signal relative to each other, e.g. adjusting the phase of the brightness signal relative to the colour signal, correcting differential gain or differential phase (circuits for matrixing [H04N 9/67](#))
- 9/78 . . for separating the brightness signal or the chrominance signal from the colour television signal, e.g. using comb filter
- 9/79 . Processing of colour television signals in connection with recording
- 9/7904 . . {using intermediate digital signal processing}
- 9/7908 . . {Suppression of interfering signals at the reproducing side, e.g. noise}
- 9/7912 . . . {the interfering signals being intermodulation signals}
- 9/7917 . . . {the interfering signals being cross-talk signals}
- 9/7921 . . {for more than one processing mode}
- 9/7925 . . . {for more than one standard}
- 9/793 . . for controlling the level of the chrominance signal, e.g. by means of automatic chroma control circuits
- 9/7933 . . . {the level control being frequency-dependent}
- 9/7936 . . . . {by using a preemphasis network at the recording side and a deemphasis network at the reproducing side}
- 9/797 . . for recording the signal in a plurality of channels, the bandwidth of each channel being less than the bandwidth of the signal ([H04N 9/804](#), [H04N 9/81](#), [H04N 9/82 take precedence](#))
- 9/7973 . . . {by dividing the luminance or colour component signal samples or frequency bands among a plurality of recording channels ([H04N 9/804](#), [H04N 9/825 take precedence](#))}



- 9/7976 . . . {by spectrum folding of the high frequency components of the luminance signal}
- 9/80 . . Transformation of the television signal for recording, e.g. modulation, frequency changing; Inverse transformation for playback
- 9/802 . . . involving processing of the sound signal ([H04N 9/806](#), [H04N 9/835](#) take precedence)
- 9/804 . . . involving pulse code modulation of the colour picture signal components
- 9/8042 . . . . {involving data reduction}
- 9/8045 . . . . . {using predictive coding}
- 9/8047 . . . . . {using transform coding}
- 9/806 . . . . with processing of the sound signal
- 9/8063 . . . . . {using time division multiplex of the PCM audio and PCM video signals}
- 9/8066 . . . . . {with insertion of the PCM audio signals in the vertical blanking interval of the PCM video signal}
- 9/808 . . . involving pulse code modulation of the composite colour video-signal
- 9/8081 . . . . {involving data reduction}
- 9/8082 . . . . . {using predictive coding}
- 2009/8084 . . . . . {using transform coding}
- 9/8085 . . . . {with processing of the sound signal}
- 9/8087 . . . . . {using time division multiplex of the PCM audio and PCM video signals}
- 9/8088 . . . . . {with insertion of the PCM audio signals in the vertical blanking interval of the PCM video signal}
- 9/81 . . . the individual colour picture signal components being recorded sequentially only
- 9/82 . . . the individual colour picture signal components being recorded simultaneously only
- 9/8205 . . . . {involving the multiplexing of an additional signal and the colour video signal}
- 9/8211 . . . . . {the additional signal being a sound signal ([H04N 9/835](#) takes precedence)}
- 9/8216 . . . . . {using time division multiplex}
- 9/8222 . . . . . {using frequency division multiplex}
- 9/8227 . . . . . {the additional signal being at least another television signal}
- 9/8233 . . . . . {the additional signal being a character code signal}
- 9/8238 . . . . . {for teletext}
- 9/8244 . . . . . {involving the use of subcodes}
- 9/825 . . . . the luminance and chrominance signals being recorded in separate channels
- 9/8255 . . . . . {with sound processing}
- 9/83 . . . . the recorded chrominance signal occupying a frequency band under the frequency band of the recorded brightness signal
- 9/831 . . . . . {using intermediate digital signal processing}
- 9/832 . . . . . {using an increased bandwidth for the luminance or the chrominance signal}
- 9/833 . . . . . {with selection of the conventional or the increased bandwidth signal, e.g. VHS or SVHS signal selection}
- 9/835 . . . . . involving processing of the sound signal
- 9/8355 . . . . . {the sound carriers being frequency multiplexed between the luminance carrier and the chrominance carrier}
- 9/84 . . . . . the recorded signal showing a feature, which is different in adjacent track parts, e.g. different phase or frequency
- 9/85 . . . . the recorded brightness signal occupying a frequency band totally overlapping the frequency band of the recorded chrominance signal, e.g. frequency interleaving
- 9/86 . . . the individual colour picture signal components being recorded sequentially and simultaneously, e.g. corresponding to SECAM-system
- 9/87 . . Regeneration of colour television signals ([H04N 9/80](#) takes precedence)
- 9/8707 . . . {using a demodulator and a remodulator, e.g. for standard conversion}
- 9/8715 . . . {involving the mixing of the reproduced video signal with a non-recorded signal, e.g. a text signal}
- 9/8722 . . . {Regeneration of a colour reference signal, e.g. the colour synchronisation burst signal, the chrominance signal carrier}
- 9/873 . . . for restoring the colour component sequence of the reproduced {chrominance} signal
- 9/877 . . . by assembling picture element blocks in an intermediate memory
- 9/88 . . . Signal drop-out compensation
- 9/882 . . . . the signal being a composite colour television signal
- 9/885 . . . . . using a digital intermediate memory
- 9/888 . . . . for signals recorded by pulse code modulation
- 9/89 . . . Time-base error compensation
- 9/893 . . . . using an analogue memory, e.g. a CCD shift register, the delay of which is controlled by a voltage controlled oscillator
- 9/896 . . . . using a digital memory with independent write-in and read-out clock generators
- 9/898 . . . using frequency multiplication of the reproduced colour signal carrier with another auxiliary reproduced signal, e.g. a pilot signal carrier {[H04N 9/83](#) takes precedence}
- 11/00 **Colour television systems** (details [H04N 9/00](#))
- 11/02 . . with bandwidth reduction ([H04N 11/04](#) {, [H04N 11/24](#)} take precedence)
- 11/04 . . using pulse code modulation {([H04N 11/24](#) takes precedence)}
- 11/042 . . {Codec means}
- 11/044 . . . {involving transform coding}
- 11/046 . . . {DPCM}
- 11/048 . . . {Sub-Nyquist sampling}
- 11/06 . . Transmission systems characterised by the manner in which the individual colour picture signal components are combined
- 11/08 . . using sequential signals only ([dot sequential systems H04N 11/12](#))
- 11/10 . . . in which colour signals are inserted in the blanking interval of brightness signal
- 11/12 . . using simultaneous signals only
- 11/14 . . . in which one signal, modulated in phase and amplitude, conveys colour information and a second signal conveys brightness information, e.g. NTSC-system
- 11/143 . . . . {Encoding means therefor ([H04N 11/16](#) takes precedence)}

11/146	. . . . {Decoding means therefor ( <a href="#">H04N 11/16 takes precedence</a> )}	13/122	. . . Improving the 3D impression of stereoscopic images by modifying image signal contents, e.g. by filtering or adding monoscopic depth cues ( <a href="#">H04N 13/128 takes precedence</a> )
11/16	. . . . the chrominance signal alternating in phase, e.g. PAL-system	13/125	. . . . for crosstalk reduction
11/162	. . . . . {Encoding means therefor ( <a href="#">H04N 11/167 takes precedence</a> )}	13/128	. . . Adjusting depth or disparity
11/165	. . . . . {Decoding means therefor ( <a href="#">H04N 11/167 takes precedence</a> )}	13/133	. . . Equalising the characteristics of different image components, e.g. their average brightness or colour balance
11/167	. . . . . {a resolution-increasing signal being multiplexed to the PAL-system signal, e.g. PAL-PLUS-system}	13/139	. . . Format conversion, e.g. of frame-rate or size
11/18	. . using simultaneous and sequential signals, e.g. SECAM-system	13/144	. . . for flicker reduction
11/183	. . . {Encoding means therefor}	13/15	. . . for colour aspects of image signals
11/186	. . . {Decoding means therefor}	13/156	. . . Mixing image signals
11/20	. . Conversion of the manner in which the individual colour picture signal components are combined, e.g. conversion of colour television standards	13/158	. . . {Switching image signals}
11/22	. . . in which simultaneous signals are converted into sequential signals or <u>vice versa</u>	13/161	. . . Encoding, multiplexing or demultiplexing different image signal components ( <a href="#">for multi-view video sequence encoding H04N 19/597</a> )
11/24	. High-definition television systems	13/167	. . . Synchronising or controlling image signals
11/26	. . {involving two-channel transmission}	13/172	. . . image signals comprising non-image signal components, e.g. headers or format information
11/28	. . {involving bandwidth reduction, e.g. subsampling}	13/178	. . . . Metadata, e.g. disparity information
11/30	. . {with transmission of the extra information by means of quadrature modulation}	13/183	. . . . On-screen display [OSD] information, e.g. subtitles or menus
<b>13/00</b>	<b>Stereoscopic video systems; Multi-view video systems; Details thereof</b>	13/189	. . Recording image signals; Reproducing recorded image signals
	<b>NOTE</b>	13/194	. . Transmission of image signals
	This group <u>covers</u> systems providing a three-dimensional [3D] effect, or different views to one or more viewers by means of electronic signals representing images, which could be taken from different viewpoints, or by means of signals including depth information {, e.g. taken from different viewpoint locations representing the interocular distance}	13/20	. Image signal generators
2013/0074	. {Stereoscopic image analysis}	13/204	. . using stereoscopic image cameras ( <a href="#">stereoscopic photography G03B 35/00</a> )
2013/0077	. . {Colour aspects}	13/207	. . . using a single 2D image sensor
2013/0081	. . {Depth or disparity estimation from stereoscopic image signals}	13/211	. . . . using temporal multiplexing
2013/0085	. . {Motion estimation from stereoscopic image signals}	13/214	. . . . using spectral multiplexing
2013/0088	. . {Synthesising a monoscopic image signal from stereoscopic images, e.g. synthesising a panoramic or high resolution monoscopic image}	13/218	. . . . using spatial multiplexing
2013/0092	. . {Image segmentation from stereoscopic image signals}	13/221	. . . . using the relative movement between cameras and objects
2013/0096	. . {Synchronisation or controlling aspects}	13/225	. . . . using parallax barriers
13/10	. Processing, recording or transmission of stereoscopic or multi-view image signals	13/229	. . . . using lenticular lenses, e.g. arrangements of cylindrical lenses
13/106	. . Processing image signals ( <a href="#">for multi-view video sequence encoding H04N 19/597</a> )	13/232	. . . . using fly-eye lenses, e.g. arrangements of circular lenses
13/111	. . . Transformation of image signals corresponding to virtual viewpoints, e.g. spatial image interpolation	13/236	. . . . using varifocal lenses or mirrors
13/117	. . . . the virtual viewpoint locations being selected by the viewers or determined by viewer tracking	13/239	. . . using two 2D image sensors having a relative position equal to or related to the interocular distance ( <a href="#">H04N 13/243 takes precedence</a> )
		13/243	. . . using three or more 2D image sensors
		13/246	. . . Calibration of cameras
		13/25	. . . using two or more image sensors with different characteristics other than in their location or field of view, e.g. having different resolutions or colour pickup characteristics; using image signals from one sensor to control the characteristics of another sensor
		13/254	. . . in combination with electromagnetic radiation sources for illuminating objects
		13/257	. . Colour aspects
		13/261	. . with monoscopic-to-stereoscopic image conversion
		13/264	. . . using the relative movement of objects in two video frames or fields
		13/266	. . . {by scanning a film}
		13/268	. . . based on depth image-based rendering [DIBR]
		13/271	. . wherein the generated image signals comprise depth maps or disparity maps

13/275	. . from 3D object models, e.g. computer-generated stereoscopic image signals	13/371	. . . for tracking viewers with different interocular distances; for tracking rotational head movements around the vertical axis
13/279	. . . the virtual viewpoint locations being selected by the viewers or determined by tracking	13/373	. . . for tracking forward-backward translational head movements, i.e. longitudinal movements
13/282	. . for generating image signals corresponding to three or more geometrical viewpoints, e.g. multi-view systems	13/376	. . . for tracking left-right translational head movements, i.e. lateral movements
13/286	. . having separate monoscopic and stereoscopic modes	13/378	. . . for tracking rotational head movements around an axis perpendicular to the screen
13/289	. . . Switching between monoscopic and stereoscopic modes	13/38	. . . for tracking vertical translational head movements
13/293	. . Generating mixed stereoscopic images; Generating mixed monoscopic and stereoscopic images, e.g. a stereoscopic image overlay window on a monoscopic image background	13/383	. . . for tracking with gaze detection, i.e. detecting the lines of sight of the viewer's eyes
13/296	. . Synchronisation thereof; Control thereof	13/385	. . alternating rapidly the location of the left-right image components on the display screens (for viewing without the aid of special glasses using time variant parallax barriers <a href="#">H04N 13/315</a> ; displays for viewing with the aid of special glasses or head-mounted displays using temporal multiplexing <a href="#">H04N 13/341</a> )
13/30	. Image reproducers (optical systems for producing stereoscopic or other three-dimensional effects <a href="#">G02B 30/00</a> )	13/388	. . Volumetric displays, i.e. systems where the image is built up from picture elements distributed through a volume
13/302	. . for viewing without the aid of special glasses, i.e. using autostereoscopic displays	13/39	. . . the picture elements emitting light at places where a pair of light beams intersect in a transparent material
13/305	. . . using lenticular lenses, e.g. arrangements of cylindrical lenses	13/393	. . . the volume being generated by a moving, e.g. vibrating or rotating, surface
13/307	. . . using fly-eye lenses, e.g. arrangements of circular lenses	13/395	. . . with depth sampling, i.e. the volume being constructed from a stack or sequence of 2D image planes
13/31	. . . using parallax barriers	13/398	. . Synchronisation thereof; Control thereof
13/312	. . . . the parallax barriers being placed behind the display panel, e.g. between backlight and spatial light modulator [SLM]	2013/40	. . {Privacy aspects, i.e. devices showing different images to different viewers, the images not being viewpoints of the same scene}
13/315	. . . . the parallax barriers being time-variant	2013/403	. . . {the images being monoscopic}
13/317	. . . using slanted parallax optics	2013/405	. . . {the images being stereoscopic or three dimensional}
13/32	. . . using arrays of controllable light sources; using moving apertures or moving light sources	17/00	<b>Diagnosis, testing or measuring for television systems or their details</b>
13/322	. . . using varifocal lenses or mirrors	17/002	. {for television cameras}
13/324	. . Colour aspects	17/004	. {for digital television systems}
13/327	. . Calibration thereof	2017/006	. {for television sound}
13/332	. . Displays for viewing with the aid of special glasses or head-mounted displays [HMD]	2017/008	. {for television teletext}
13/334	. . . using spectral multiplexing	17/02	. for colour television signals
13/337	. . . using polarisation multiplexing	17/04	. for receivers
13/339	. . . using spatial multiplexing ( <a href="#">H04N 13/337</a> takes precedence)	17/045	. . {Self-contained testing apparatus}
13/341	. . . using temporal multiplexing	17/06	. for recorders
13/344	. . . with head-mounted left-right displays	19/00	<b>Methods or arrangements for coding, decoding, compressing or decompressing digital video signals</b>
13/346	. . using prisms or semi-transparent mirrors	19/10	. using adaptive coding
13/349	. . Multi-view displays for displaying three or more geometrical viewpoints without viewer tracking (for viewing without the aid of special glasses using fly-eye lenses <a href="#">H04N 13/307</a> )		<b>NOTE</b>
13/351	. . . for displaying simultaneously		When classifying in this group, each aspect relating to adaptive coding should, insofar as possible, be classified in each one of subgroups <a href="#">H04N 19/102</a> , <a href="#">H04N 19/134</a> , <a href="#">H04N 19/169</a> and <a href="#">H04N 19/189</a> .
13/354	. . . for displaying sequentially	19/102	. . characterised by the element, parameter or selection affected or controlled by the adaptive coding
13/356	. . having separate monoscopic and stereoscopic modes	19/103	. . . Selection of coding mode or of prediction mode
13/359	. . . Switching between monoscopic and stereoscopic modes		
13/361	. . Reproducing mixed stereoscopic images; Reproducing mixed monoscopic and stereoscopic images, e.g. a stereoscopic image overlay window on a monoscopic image background		
13/363	. . using image projection screens (volumetric display <a href="#">H04N 13/388</a> )		
13/365	. . using digital micromirror devices [DMD]		
13/366	. . using viewer tracking		
13/368	. . . for two or more viewers		

- 19/105 . . . . Selection of the reference unit for prediction within a chosen coding or prediction mode, e.g. adaptive choice of position and number of pixels used for prediction
- 19/107 . . . . between spatial and temporal predictive coding, e.g. picture refresh
- 19/109 . . . . among a plurality of temporal predictive coding modes
- 19/11 . . . . among a plurality of spatial predictive coding modes
- 19/112 . . . . according to a given display mode, e.g. for interlaced or progressive display mode
- 19/114 . . . . Adapting the group of pictures [GOP] structure, e.g. number of B-frames between two anchor frames ([H04N 19/107 takes precedence](#))
- 19/115 . . . . Selection of the code volume for a coding unit prior to coding
- 19/117 . . . . Filters, e.g. for pre-processing or post-processing ([sub-band filter banks](#) [H04N 19/635](#))
- 19/119 . . . . Adaptive subdivision aspects, e.g. subdivision of a picture into rectangular or non-rectangular coding blocks
- 19/12 . . . . Selection from among a plurality of transforms or standards, e.g. selection between discrete cosine transform [DCT] and sub-band transform or selection between H.263 and H.264
- NOTE**
- When classifying in this group, each compression algorithm is further classified in the relevant subgroups of groups [H04N 19/60](#) or [H04N 19/90](#).
- 19/122 . . . . Selection of transform size, e.g. 8x8 or 2x4x8 DCT; Selection of sub-band transforms of varying structure or type
- 19/124 . . . . Quantisation
- 19/126 . . . . Details of normalisation or weighting functions, e.g. normalisation matrices or variable uniform quantisers
- 19/127 . . . . Prioritisation of hardware or computational resources
- 19/129 . . . . Scanning of coding units, e.g. zig-zag scan of transform coefficients or flexible macroblock ordering [FMO]
- 19/13 . . . . Adaptive entropy coding, e.g. adaptive variable length coding [AVLC] or context adaptive binary arithmetic coding [CABAC]
- 19/132 . . . . Sampling, masking or truncation of coding units, e.g. adaptive resampling, frame skipping, frame interpolation or high-frequency transform coefficient masking
- 19/134 . . characterised by the element, parameter or criterion affecting or controlling the adaptive coding
- 19/136 . . . . Incoming video signal characteristics or properties
- 19/137 . . . . Motion inside a coding unit, e.g. average field, frame or block difference
- 19/139 . . . . . Analysis of motion vectors, e.g. their magnitude, direction, variance or reliability
- 19/14 . . . . Coding unit complexity, e.g. amount of activity or edge presence estimation ([H04N 19/146 takes precedence](#))
- 19/142 . . . . Detection of scene cut or scene change
- 19/146 . . . . Data rate or code amount at the encoder output
- 19/147 . . . . according to rate distortion criteria ([rate-distortion as a criterion for motion estimation](#) [H04N 19/567](#))
- 19/149 . . . . by estimating the code amount by means of a model, e.g. mathematical model or statistical model
- 19/15 . . . . by monitoring actual compressed data size at the memory before deciding storage at the transmission buffer
- 19/152 . . . . by measuring the fullness of the transmission buffer
- 19/154 . . . . Measured or subjectively estimated visual quality after decoding, e.g. measurement of distortion ([use of rate-distortion criteria](#) [H04N 19/147](#))
- 19/156 . . . . Availability of hardware or computational resources, e.g. encoding based on power-saving criteria
- 19/157 . . . . Assigned coding mode, i.e. the coding mode being predefined or preselected to be further used for selection of another element or parameter
- 19/159 . . . . Prediction type, e.g. intra-frame, inter-frame or bidirectional frame prediction
- 19/16 . . . . for a given display mode, e.g. for interlaced or progressive display mode
- 19/162 . . . . User input
- 19/164 . . . . Feedback from the receiver or from the transmission channel
- 19/166 . . . . concerning the amount of transmission errors, e.g. bit error rate [BER]
- 19/167 . . . . Position within a video image, e.g. region of interest [ROI]
- 19/169 . . characterised by the coding unit, i.e. the structural portion or semantic portion of the video signal being the object or the subject of the adaptive coding
- 19/17 . . . . the unit being an image region, e.g. an object
- 19/172 . . . . the region being a picture, frame or field
- 19/174 . . . . the region being a slice, e.g. a line of blocks or a group of blocks
- 19/176 . . . . the region being a block, e.g. a macroblock
- 19/177 . . . . the unit being a group of pictures [GOP]
- 19/179 . . . . the unit being a scene or a shot
- 19/18 . . . . the unit being a set of transform coefficients
- 19/182 . . . . the unit being a pixel
- 19/184 . . . . the unit being bits, e.g. of the compressed video stream
- 19/186 . . . . the unit being a colour or a chrominance component
- 19/187 . . . . the unit being a scalable video layer
- 19/188 . . . . {the unit being a video data packet, e.g. a network abstraction layer [NAL] unit}
- 19/1883 . . . . {the unit relating to sub-band structure, e.g. hierarchical level, directional tree, e.g. low-high [LH], high-low [HL], high-high [HH]}
- 19/1887 . . . . {the unit being a variable length codeword}



- 19/189 . . characterised by the adaptation method, adaptation tool or adaptation type used for the adaptive coding
- 19/19 . . . using optimisation based on Lagrange multipliers
- 19/192 . . . the adaptation method, adaptation tool or adaptation type being iterative or recursive
- 19/194 . . . . involving only two passes
- 19/196 . . . being specially adapted for the computation of encoding parameters, e.g. by averaging previously computed encoding parameters ([processing of motion vectors H04N 19/513](#))
- 19/197 . . . . {including determination of the initial value of an encoding parameter ([H04N 19/56 takes precedence](#))}
- 19/198 . . . . {including smoothing of a sequence of encoding parameters, e.g. by averaging, by choice of the maximum, minimum or median value}
- 19/20 . using video object coding
- 19/21 . . with binary alpha-plane coding for video objects, e.g. context-based arithmetic encoding [CAE]
- 19/23 . . with coding of regions that are present throughout a whole video segment, e.g. sprites, background or mosaic
- 19/25 . . with scene description coding, e.g. binary format for scenes [BIFS] compression
- 19/27 . . involving both synthetic and natural picture components, e.g. synthetic natural hybrid coding [SNHC]
- 19/29 . . involving scalability at the object level, e.g. video object layer [VOL]
- 19/30 . using hierarchical techniques, e.g. scalability ([H04N 19/63 takes precedence](#))
- 19/31 . . in the temporal domain
- 19/33 . . in the spatial domain
- 19/34 . . Scalability techniques involving progressive bit-plane based encoding of the enhancement layer, e.g. fine granular scalability [FGS]
- 19/36 . . Scalability techniques involving formatting the layers as a function of picture distortion after decoding, e.g. signal-to-noise [SNR] scalability
- 19/37 . . with arrangements for assigning different transmission priorities to video input data or to video coded data
- 19/39 . . involving multiple description coding [MDC], i.e. with separate layers being structured as independently decodable descriptions of input picture data
- 19/395 . . {involving distributed video coding [DVC], e.g. Wyner-Ziv video coding or Slepian-Wolf video coding}
- 19/40 . using video transcoding, i.e. partial or full decoding of a coded input stream followed by re-encoding of the decoded output stream
- 19/42 . characterised by implementation details or hardware specially adapted for video compression or decompression, e.g. dedicated software implementation ([H04N 19/635 takes precedence](#))
- 19/423 . . characterised by memory arrangements ([H04N 19/433 takes precedence](#))
- 19/426 . . . using memory downsizing methods
- 19/427 . . . . {Display on the fly, e.g. simultaneous writing to and reading from decoding memory}
- 19/428 . . . . {Recompression, e.g. by spatial or temporal decimation}
- 19/43 . . Hardware specially adapted for motion estimation or compensation
- 19/433 . . . characterised by techniques for memory access
- 19/436 . . using parallelised computational arrangements
- 19/439 . . {using cascaded computational arrangements for performing a single operation, e.g. filtering}
- 19/44 . Decoders specially adapted therefor, e.g. video decoders which are asymmetric with respect to the encoder
- 19/45 . . {performing compensation of the inverse transform mismatch, e.g. Inverse Discrete Cosine Transform [IDCT] mismatch}
- 19/46 . Embedding additional information in the video signal during the compression process ([H04N 19/517](#), [H04N 19/68](#), [H04N 19/70 take precedence](#))
- 19/463 . . by compressing encoding parameters before transmission
- 19/467 . . characterised by the embedded information being invisible, e.g. watermarking
- 19/48 . using compressed domain processing techniques other than decoding, e.g. modification of transform coefficients, variable length coding [VLC] data or run-length data ([motion estimation in a transform domain H04N 19/547](#); [processing of decoded motion vectors H04N 19/513](#))
- 19/50 . using predictive coding ([H04N 19/61 takes precedence](#))
- 19/503 . . involving temporal prediction ([adaptive coding with adaptive selection between spatial and temporal predictive coding H04N 19/107](#); [adaptive coding with adaptive selection among a plurality of temporal predictive coding modes H04N 19/109](#))
- 19/507 . . . using conditional replenishment
- 19/51 . . . Motion estimation or motion compensation
- 19/513 . . . . Processing of motion vectors
- 19/517 . . . . . by encoding
- 19/52 . . . . . by predictive encoding
- 19/521 . . . . . {for estimating the reliability of the determined motion vectors or motion vector field, e.g. for smoothing the motion vector field or for correcting motion vectors}
- 19/523 . . . . with sub-pixel accuracy
- 19/527 . . . . Global motion vector estimation
- 19/53 . . . . Multi-resolution motion estimation; Hierarchical motion estimation
- 19/533 . . . . Motion estimation using multistep search, e.g. 2D-log search or one-at-a-time search [OTS]
- 19/537 . . . . Motion estimation other than block-based
- 19/54 . . . . . using feature points or meshes
- 19/543 . . . . . using regions
- 19/547 . . . . Motion estimation performed in a transform domain
- 19/55 . . . . Motion estimation with spatial constraints, e.g. at image or region borders
- 19/553 . . . . Motion estimation dealing with occlusions

- 19/557 . . . Motion estimation characterised by stopping computation or iteration based on certain criteria, e.g. error magnitude being too large or early exit
- 19/56 . . . Motion estimation with initialisation of the vector search, e.g. estimating a good candidate to initiate a search
- 19/563 . . . Motion estimation with padding, i.e. with filling of non-object values in an arbitrarily shaped picture block or region for estimation purposes
- 19/567 . . . Motion estimation based on rate distortion criteria
- 19/57 . . . Motion estimation characterised by a search window with variable size or shape
- 19/573 . . . Motion compensation with multiple frame prediction using two or more reference frames in a given prediction direction
- 19/577 . . . Motion compensation with bidirectional frame interpolation, i.e. using B-pictures
- 19/58 . . . Motion compensation with long-term prediction, i.e. the reference frame for a current frame not being the temporally closest one ([H04N 19/23 takes precedence](#))
- 19/583 . . . Motion compensation with overlapping blocks
- 19/587 . . involving temporal sub-sampling or interpolation, e.g. decimation or subsequent interpolation of pictures in a video sequence
- 19/59 . . involving spatial sub-sampling or interpolation, e.g. alteration of picture size or resolution
- 19/593 . . involving spatial prediction techniques
- 19/597 . . specially adapted for multi-view video sequence encoding
- 19/60 . using transform coding
- 19/61 . . in combination with predictive coding
- 19/615 . . . using motion compensated temporal filtering [MCTF]
- 19/619 . . . {the transform being operated outside the prediction loop}
- 19/62 . . by frequency transforming in three dimensions ([H04N 19/63 takes precedence](#))
- 19/625 . . using discrete cosine transform [DCT]
- 19/63 . . using sub-band based transform, e.g. wavelets
- 19/635 . . . characterised by filter definition or implementation details
- 19/64 . . . characterised by ordering of coefficients or of bits for transmission
- 19/645 . . . by grouping of coefficients into blocks after the transform
- 19/647 . . . {using significance based coding, e.g. Embedded Zerotrees of Wavelets [EZW] or Set Partitioning in Hierarchical Trees [SPIHT]}
- 19/649 . . {the transform being applied to non rectangular image segments}
- 19/65 . using error resilience
- 19/66 . . involving data partitioning, i.e. separation of data into packets or partitions according to importance
- 19/67 . . involving unequal error protection [UEP], i.e. providing protection according to the importance of the data
- 19/68 . . involving the insertion of resynchronisation markers into the bitstream
- 19/69 . . involving reversible variable length codes [RVLC]
- 19/70 . characterised by syntax aspects related to video coding, e.g. related to compression standards
- 19/80 . Details of filtering operations specially adapted for video compression, e.g. for pixel interpolation ([H04N 19/635](#), [H04N 19/86 take precedence](#))
- 19/82 . . involving filtering within a prediction loop
- 19/85 . using pre-processing or post-processing specially adapted for video compression
- 19/86 . . involving reduction of coding artifacts, e.g. of blockiness
- 19/865 . . . {with detection of the former encoding block subdivision in decompressed video}
- 19/87 . . involving scene cut or scene change detection in combination with video compression
- 19/88 . . involving rearrangement of data among different coding units, e.g. shuffling, interleaving, scrambling or permutation of pixel data or permutation of transform coefficient data among different blocks
- 19/89 . . involving methods or arrangements for detection of transmission errors at the decoder
- 19/895 . . . in combination with error concealment
- 19/90 . using coding techniques not provided for in groups [H04N 19/10-H04N 19/85](#), e.g. fractals
- 19/91 . . Entropy coding, e.g. variable length coding [VLC] or arithmetic coding
- 19/93 . . Run-length coding
- 19/94 . . Vector quantisation
- 19/96 . . Tree coding, e.g. quad-tree coding
- 19/97 . . Matching pursuit coding
- 19/98 . . Adaptive-dynamic-range coding [ADRC]
- 19/99 . . {involving fractal coding}
- 21/00** **Selective content distribution, e.g. interactive television or video on demand [VOD] (real-time bi-directional transmission of motion video data [H04N 7/14](#) {; broadcast or conference over packet switching networks [H04L 12/18](#)})**

## NOTES

1. This group covers :
  - interactive video distribution processes, systems, or elements thereof, which are characterised by point-to-multipoint system configurations, and which are mainly used for motion video data unidirectional distribution or delivery resulting from interactions between systems operators, e.g. access or service providers, or users e.g. subscribers, and system elements.
  - such systems include dedicated communication systems, such as television distribution systems, which primarily distribute or deliver motion video data in the manner indicated, which may, in addition, provide a framework for further, diverse data communications or services in either unidirectional or bi-directional form. However, video will occupy most of the downlink bandwidth in the distribution process.
  - typically, system operators interface with transmitter-side elements or users' interface with receiver-side elements in order to facilitate, through interaction with such elements, the dynamic control of data

processing or data flow at various points in the system. This interaction is typically occasional or intermittent in nature.

- processes, systems or elements thereof specially adapted to the generation, distribution and processing of data, which is either associated with video content, e.g. metadata, ratings, or related to the user or his environment and which has been actively or passively gathered. This data is either used to facilitate interaction or to alter or target the content.
- 2. In this main group, the first place priority rule is applied, i.e. at each hierarchical level, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the first appropriate place.
- 3. In this main group, the following terms and expressions are used with the meaning indicated:
  - additional data - designates still pictures, textual, graphical or executable data such as software. It is used to convey supplemental information and can be generated prior to or during the distribution process itself, e.g. metadata, keys.
  - content designates video or audio streams, which may be combined with additional data. Video data will always be present and occupy most of the downlink bandwidth in the distribution process
  - server - designates an apparatus designed for adapting the content received from the content provider to the distribution network. It also manages the distribution to client devices or intermediate components over a network. Further servers may also be present for gathering or generating additional data, e.g. rights management server
  - additional data server - designates a server, which sole purpose is the distribution or management of additional data. It is not in charge of the distribution of video or audio data
  - client - designates an apparatus such as a TV receiver, a set-top-box, a PC-TV, a mobile appliance (e.g. mobile phone or receiver in a vehicle), for receiving video, audio and possibly additional data from one or several servers or intermediate components via a network for further processing, storing or displaying. It can also transmit this data on a home-based local network to further devices, e.g. a home server transmitting video to PCs and set-top-boxes within a home.
  - local network - pertains to a restricted area, e.g. a home or a vehicle, and designates the link between a client and its peripheral devices
  - network - is to be distinguished from "local network": "network" designates the link between the server and the clients, or between the server and the intermediate components, or between the intermediate components and the clients, or between remotely located clients
  - distribution - encompasses broadcasting, multicasting and unicasting techniques for transmitting content from one or more sources to one or more receiving stations. The distribution follows a request by a receiving station to the source, e.g. VOD or from a customization of the content by the source,

e.g. targeting advertisements to a demographic group in a unidirectional or bidirectional system. Additionally, distribution encompasses techniques where the client acts as a source and another client acts as a receiving station, e.g. a peer-to-peer system for sharing video among client devices

end-user - designates a physical person, e.g. a TV viewer, who consumes the content using the client device. He is the final recipient of the content distributed by the server

interaction - covers actions occurring between or among two or more objects that have an effect upon one another, wherein objects

comprise users, system operators, system elements, or content. The user may interact with content locally at the client device, e.g. for requesting additional data stored within the client device. The user may interact with content remotely through a server e.g. for

VOD playback control or for uploading video to a server. The client device may interact with the content e.g. selecting content based upon the user profile. The client device may

interact with a server using a return channel, e.g. for authenticating client or uploading client hardware capabilities. The server may interact with a client device, e.g. to force a client to tune to an advertisement channel

upstream - designates the direction of data flow towards the source, e.g. a server receiving a request via a mobile phone network.

downstream - designates the direction of data flow towards a client, e.g. a client receiving data originating from a server elementary stream An elementary stream (ES) as defined by the MPEG system layer designates the output of an audio or video encoder.

- 21/20 . Servers specifically adapted for the distribution of content, e.g. VOD servers; Operations thereof
- 21/21 . . Server components or server architectures
- 21/214 . . . Specialised server platform, e.g. server located in an airplane, hotel, hospital {(arrangements specially adapted for local area broadcast systems H04H 20/61)}
- 21/2143 . . . . {located in a single building, e.g. hotel, hospital or museum (arrangements specially adapted for plural spots in a confined site in broadcast systems H04H 20/63; adaptations for transmission by electric cable for domestic distribution in television systems H04N 7/106)}
- 21/2146 . . . . {located in mass transportation means, e.g. aircraft, train or bus (flight-deck installations for entertainment or communications B64D 11/0015; arrangements specially adapted for transportation systems in broadcast systems H04H 20/62; moving wireless networks H04W 84/005)}
- 21/218 . . . Source of audio or video content {, e.g. local disk arrays (details of retrieval in video databases G06F 16/739)}
- 21/21805 . . . . {enabling multiple viewpoints, e.g. using a plurality of cameras}

- 21/2181 . . . . {comprising remotely distributed storage units, e.g. when movies are replicated over a plurality of video servers (distributed storage of data in networks, e.g. transport arrangements for network file system [NFS], storage area networks [SAN] or network attached storage [NAS], [H04L 67/1097](#))}
- 21/21815 . . . . {comprising local storage units}
- 21/2182 . . . . {involving memory arrays, e.g. RAID disk arrays (RAID arrays *per se* [G06F 3/0689](#); use of parity to protect data in RAID systems [G06F 11/1008](#))}
- 21/21825 . . . . {involving removable storage units, e.g. tertiary storage such as magnetic tapes or optical disks}
- 21/2183 . . . . Cache memory {(caches in web servers or browsers [G06F 16/9574](#); intermediate storage and caching in data networks [H04L 67/568](#))}
- 21/2187 . . . . Live feed
- 21/222 . . . . Secondary servers, e.g. proxy server, cable television Head-end {(provisioning of proxy services in data packet switching networks [H04L 67/56](#))}
- 21/2221 . . . . {being a cable television head-end (CATV in broadcast systems [H04H 20/78](#))}
- 21/2223 . . . . {being a public access point, e.g. for downloading to or uploading from clients (arrangements specially adapted to plural spots in a confined site in broadcast systems [H04H 20/63](#))}
- 21/2225 . . . . Local VOD servers
- 21/226 . . . {Characteristics of the server or} Internal components of the server
- 21/2265 . . . . {Server identification by a unique number or address, e.g. serial number (network arrangements, protocols or services for addressing or naming [H04L 61/00](#))}
- 21/23 . . . Processing of content or additional data; Elementary server operations; Server middleware
- 21/231 . . . Content storage operation, e.g. caching movies for short term storage, replicating data over plural servers, prioritizing data for deletion
- 21/23103 . . . . {using load balancing strategies, e.g. by placing or distributing content on different disks, different memories or different servers (storage management [G06F 3/0604](#); allocation of resources considering the load in multiprogramming arrangements [G06F 9/505](#); techniques for rebalancing the load in a distributed system [G06F 9/5083](#); access to distributed or replicated servers, e.g. load balancing, in data networks [H04L 67/1001](#))}
- 21/23106 . . . . {involving caching operations (prefetching while addressing of a memory level in which the access to the desired data or data block requires associative addressing means within memory systems or architectures [G06F 12/0862](#); caching at an intermediate stage in a data network [H04L 67/568](#))}
- 21/23109 . . . . {by placing content in organized collections, e.g. EPG data repository (details of retrieval of video data and associated meta data in video databases [G06F 16/739](#))}
- 21/23113 . . . . {involving housekeeping operations for stored content, e.g. prioritizing content for deletion because of storage space restrictions (storage management, e.g. defragmentation [G06F 3/0604](#); unloading stored programs [G06F 9/445](#); housekeeping operations in file systems, e.g. deletion policies [G06F 16/10](#); buffering arrangements in a network node or in an end terminal in packet networks [H04L 49/90](#))}
- 21/23116 . . . . {involving data replication, e.g. over plural servers (synchronization of replicated data [G06F 11/1658](#); error detection or correction by means of data replication [G06F 11/2053](#); replication in distributed file systems [G06F 16/10](#); replication in distributed file systems [G06F 16/27](#); replication or mirroring of data in data networks [H04L 67/1095](#))}
- 21/2312 . . . . Data placement on disk arrays {(data placement in general [G06F 3/0604](#))}
- 21/2315 . . . . . using interleaving
- 21/2318 . . . . . using striping
- 21/232 . . . Content retrieval operation {locally} within server, e.g. reading video streams from disk arrays {(storage management [G06F 3/0604](#); details of querying and searching of video data from a database [G06F 16/739](#))}
- 21/2323 . . . . {using file mapping}
- 21/2326 . . . . {Scheduling disk or memory reading operations}
- 21/233 . . . Processing of audio elementary streams {(monitoring, identification or recognition of audio in broadcast systems [H04H 60/58](#))}
- 21/2335 . . . . {involving reformatting operations of audio signals, e.g. by converting from one coding standard to another (details of audio signal transcoding [G10L 19/173](#))}
- 21/234 . . . Processing of video elementary streams, e.g. splicing of video streams or manipulating encoded video stream scene graphs
- 21/23406 . . . . {involving management of server-side video buffer}
- 21/23412 . . . . {for generating or manipulating the scene composition of objects, e.g. MPEG-4 objects}
- 21/23418 . . . . {involving operations for analysing video streams, e.g. detecting features or characteristics (television picture signal circuitry for scene change detection [H04N 5/147](#); filtering for image enhancement [G06T 5/00](#); methods or arrangements for recognising scenes [G06V 20/00](#); arrangements characterised by components specially adapted for monitoring, identification or recognition of video in broadcast systems [H04H 60/59](#))}
- 21/23424 . . . . {involving splicing one content stream with another content stream, e.g. for inserting or substituting an advertisement}
- 21/2343 . . . . involving reformatting operations of video signals for distribution or compliance with end-user requests or end-user device requirements {(video transcoding [H04N 19/40](#); media packet handling at the source [H04L 65/762](#))}



21/234309 . . . . .	{by transcoding between formats or standards, e.g. from MPEG-2 to MPEG-4 or from Quicktime to Realvideo (conversion of standards in analog television systems <a href="#">H04N 7/01</a> )}	21/23608 . . . . .	{Remultiplexing multiplex streams, e.g. involving modifying time stamps or remapping the packet identifiers}
21/234318 . . . . .	{by decomposing into objects, e.g. MPEG-4 objects}	21/23611 . . . . .	{Insertion of stuffing data into a multiplex stream, e.g. to obtain a constant bitrate (synchronisation arrangements in time-division multiplex systems using bit stuffing for systems with different or fluctuating information rates <a href="#">H04J 3/073</a> )}
21/234327 . . . . .	{by decomposing into layers, e.g. base layer and one or more enhancement layers}	21/23614 . . . . .	{Multiplexing of additional data and video streams (arrangements for simultaneous broadcast of plural pieces of information <a href="#">H04H 20/28</a> )}
21/234336 . . . . .	{by media transcoding, e.g. video is transformed into a slideshow of still pictures or audio is converted into text}	21/23617 . . . . .	{by inserting additional data into a data carousel, e.g. inserting software modules into a DVB carousel (arrangements for broadcast or for distribution of identical information repeatedly in broadcast distribution systems <a href="#">H04H 20/16</a> )}
21/234345 . . . . .	{the reformatting operation being performed only on part of the stream, e.g. a region of the image or a time segment}	21/2362 . . . . .	Generation or processing of Service Information [SI]
21/234354 . . . . .	{by altering signal-to-noise ratio parameters, e.g. requantization}	21/2365 . . . . .	Multiplexing of several video streams
21/234363 . . . . .	{by altering the spatial resolution, e.g. for clients with a lower screen resolution}	21/23655 . . . . .	{Statistical multiplexing, e.g. by controlling the encoder to alter its bitrate to optimize the bandwidth utilization}
21/234372 . . . . .	{for performing aspect ratio conversion}	21/2368 . . . . .	Multiplexing of audio and video streams
21/234381 . . . . .	{by altering the temporal resolution, e.g. decreasing the frame rate by frame skipping}	21/237 . . . . .	Communication with additional data server
21/23439 . . . . .	{for generating different versions}	21/238 . . . . .	Interfacing the downstream path of the transmission network, e.g. adapting the transmission rate of a video stream to network bandwidth; Processing of multiplex streams
21/2347 . . . . .	involving video stream encryption		{(hybrid fiber coaxial [HFC] networks for downstream channel allocation for video distribution <a href="#">H04L 12/2801</a> ; flow control in packet networks <a href="#">H04L 47/10</a> ; real-time communication protocols in data switching networks <a href="#">H04L 65/00</a> ; scheduling or organising the servicing of application requests <a href="#">H04L 67/60</a> )}
21/23473 . . . . .	{by pre-encrypting}	21/23805 . . . . .	{Controlling the feeding rate to the network, e.g. by controlling the video pump}
21/23476 . . . . .	{by partially encrypting, e.g. encrypting the ending portion of a movie}	21/2381 . . . . .	Adapting the multiplex stream to a specific network, e.g. an Internet Protocol [IP] network {(transmission of MPEG streams over ATM <a href="#">H04L 12/5601</a> )}
21/235 . . . . .	Processing of additional data, e.g. scrambling of additional data or processing content descriptors	21/2383 . . . . .	Channel coding {or modulation} of digital bit-stream, e.g. QPSK modulation (arrangements for detecting or preventing errors in the information received by adapting the channel coding <a href="#">H04L 1/0009</a> ; analogue front ends or means for connecting modulators, demodulators or transceivers to a transmission line <a href="#">H04L 27/0002</a> )}
21/2351 . . . . .	{involving encryption of additional data (arrangements using cryptography for the use of broadcast information or broadcast-related information <a href="#">H04H 60/23</a> )}	21/2385 . . . . .	Channel allocation ( <a href="#">H04N 21/266</a> takes precedence); Bandwidth allocation ( <a href="#">H04N 21/24</a> takes precedence {; allocation of channels according to the instantaneous demands of the users in time-division multiplex systems <a href="#">H04J 3/1682</a> ; admission control, resource allocation in open networks <a href="#">H04L 12/5692</a> ; arrangements for maintenance or administration in data switching networks involving bandwidth and capacity management <a href="#">H04L 41/0896</a> ; negotiating bandwidth in wireless networks <a href="#">H04W 28/16</a> )}
21/2353 . . . . .	{specifically adapted to content descriptors, e.g. coding, compressing or processing of metadata}		
21/2355 . . . . .	{involving reformatting operations of additional data, e.g. HTML pages (optimising the visualization of content for information retrieval from the Internet <a href="#">G06F 16/9577</a> ; tracking of instant messages <a href="#">H04L 51/234</a> ; media packet handling at the source <a href="#">H04L 65/762</a> )}		
21/2356 . . . . .	{by altering the spatial resolution}		
21/2358 . . . . .	{for generating different versions, e.g. for different recipient devices}		
21/236 . . . . .	Assembling of a multiplex stream, e.g. transport stream, by combining a video stream with other content or additional data, e.g. inserting a URL [Uniform Resource Locator] into a video stream, multiplexing software data into a video stream; Remultiplexing of multiplex streams; Insertion of stuffing bits into the multiplex stream, e.g. to obtain a constant bit-rate; Assembling of a packetised elementary stream {(multiplexing of data packets for data networks, e.g. RTP/UDP <a href="#">H04L 65/00</a> )}		
21/23602 . . . . .	{Multiplexing isochronously with the video sync, e.g. according to bit-parallel or bit-serial interface formats, as SDI}		
21/23605 . . . . .	{Creation or processing of packetized elementary streams [PES]}		

- 21/2387 . . . . Stream processing in response to a playback request from an end-user, e.g. for trick-play
- 21/2389 . . . . Multiplex stream processing, e.g. multiplex stream encrypting
- 21/23892 . . . . . {involving embedding information at multiplex stream level, e.g. embedding a watermark at packet level}
- 21/23895 . . . . . {involving multiplex stream encryption}
- 21/23897 . . . . . {by partially encrypting, e.g. encrypting only the ending portion of a movie}
- 21/239 . . . . Interfacing the upstream path of the transmission network, e.g. prioritizing client {content} requests (hybrid fiber coaxial [HFC] networks for upstream channel allocation for video distribution [H04L 12/2801](#); flow control in data networks [H04L 47/10](#); real-time communication protocols in data switching networks [H04L 65/00](#); scheduling or organising the servicing of application requests [H04L 67/60](#))
- 21/2393 . . . . . {involving handling client requests (scheduling or organising the servicing of application requests [H04L 67/60](#))}
- 21/2396 . . . . . {characterized by admission policies (admission control, resource allocation in open networks [H04L 12/5692](#); arrangements for network security using user profiles for access control [H04L 63/102](#); access security in wireless networks [H04W 12/08](#))}
- 21/24 . . . . Monitoring of processes or resources, e.g. monitoring of server load, available bandwidth, upstream requests {(monitoring of server performance or load [G06F 11/34](#); arrangements for observation, testing or troubleshooting for broadcast or for distribution combined with broadcast [H04H 20/12](#))}
- 21/2401 . . . . . {Monitoring of the client buffer}
- 21/2402 . . . . . {Monitoring of the downstream path of the transmission network, e.g. bandwidth available (traffic monitoring in data switching networks [H04L 43/00](#); monitoring data switching networks utilization [H04L 43/0876](#))}
- 21/2404 . . . . . {Monitoring of server processing errors or hardware failure (error or fault detection [G06F 11/07](#); monitoring in general [G06F 11/30](#))}
- 21/2405 . . . . . {Monitoring of the internal components or processes of the server, e.g. server load (allocation of resources in multiprogramming arrangements [G06F 9/50](#); performance measurement of computer activity [G06F 11/34](#))}
- 21/2407 . . . . . {Monitoring of transmitted content, e.g. distribution time, number of downloads (arrangements for monitoring programmes for broadcast or for distribution combined with broadcast [H04H 20/14](#))}
- 21/2408 . . . . . {Monitoring of the upstream path of the transmission network, e.g. client requests (monitoring data switching networks utilization [H04L 43/0876](#); scheduling or organising the servicing of application requests [H04L 67/60](#))}
- 21/241 . . . . Operating system [OS] processes, e.g. server setup
- 21/242 . . . . Synchronization processes, e.g. processing of PCR [Program Clock References] {(arrangements for synchronising broadcast or distribution via plural systems in broadcast distribution systems [H04H 20/18](#))}
- 21/25 . . . . Management operations performed by the server for facilitating the content distribution or administrating data related to end-users or client devices, e.g. end-user or client device authentication, learning user preferences for recommending movies {(maintenance or administration in data networks [H04L 41/00](#))}
- 21/251 . . . . . {Learning process for intelligent management, e.g. learning user preferences for recommending movies (details of learning user preferences for the retrieval of video data in a video database [G06F 16/739](#); computer systems using learning methods [G06N 3/08](#))}
- 21/252 . . . . . {Processing of multiple end-users' preferences to derive collaborative data}
- 21/254 . . . . Management at additional data server, e.g. shopping server, rights management server {(arrangements for maintenance or administration in data networks [H04L 41/00](#); network services using third party service providers [H04L 67/53](#))}
- 21/2541 . . . . . {Rights Management (protecting software against unauthorised usage in a vending or licensing environment [G06F 21/10](#); security in data switching network management [H04L 41/28](#); security management or policies for network security [H04L 63/20](#); access security in wireless networks [H04W 12/08](#))}
- 21/2542 . . . . . {for selling goods, e.g. TV shopping (payment schemes, payment architectures or payment protocols for electronic shopping systems [G06Q 20/12](#))}
- 21/2543 . . . . . Billing {, e.g. for subscription services (payment schemes, architectures or protocols [G06Q 20/00](#); e-commerce [G06Q 30/00](#); arrangements for billing for the use of broadcast information or broadcast-related information [H04H 60/21](#))}
- 21/25435 . . . . . {involving characteristics of content or additional data, e.g. video resolution or the amount of advertising}
- 21/2547 . . . . . Third Party Billing, e.g. billing of advertiser
- 21/258 . . . . Client or end-user data management, e.g. managing client capabilities, user preferences or demographics, processing of multiple end-users preferences to derive collaborative data {(arrangements for services using the result on the distributing side of broadcast systems [H04H 60/66](#); profiles in network data switching protocols [H04L 67/30](#))}
- 21/25808 . . . . . {Management of client data (terminal profiles in network data switching protocols [H04L 67/303](#))}

- 21/25816 . . . . . {involving client authentication (restricting access to computer systems by authenticating users using a predetermined code [G06F 21/33](#); cryptographic authentication protocols [H04L 9/32](#); networks authentication protocols [H04L 63/08](#); authentication in wireless network security [H04W 12/06](#))}
- 21/25825 . . . . . {involving client display capabilities, e.g. screen resolution of a mobile phone (optimising the visualisation of content during browsing in the Internet [G06F 16/9577](#); processing of terminal status or physical abilities in wireless networks [H04W 8/22](#); authentication in wireless network security [H04W 12/06](#))}
- 21/25833 . . . . . {involving client hardware characteristics, e.g. manufacturer, processing or storage capabilities (allocation of resources considering hardware capabilities in multiprogramming arrangements [G06F 9/5044](#); allocation of resources considering software capabilities in multiprogramming arrangements [G06F 9/5055](#))}
- 21/25841 . . . . . {involving the geographical location of the client (retrieval from the Internet by querying based on geographical locations [G06F 16/9537](#); arrangements for identifying locations of receiving stations in broadcast systems [H04H 60/51](#); location of the user terminal in data switching networks [H04L 67/52](#); services making use of the location of users or terminals in wireless networks [H04W 4/02](#); locating users or terminals in wireless networks [H04W 64/00](#))}
- 21/2585 . . . . . {Generation of a revocation list, e.g. of client devices involved in piracy acts}
- 21/25858 . . . . . {involving client software characteristics, e.g. OS identifier}
- 21/25866 . . . . . {Management of end-user data (customer care in data networks [H04L 41/5077](#))}
- 21/25875 . . . . . {involving end-user authentication (restricting access to computer systems by authenticating users using a predetermined code [G06F 21/33](#); arrangements for secret or secure communication including means for verifying the identity or authority of a user of the system [H04L 9/32](#); networks authentication protocols [H04L 63/08](#); authentication in wireless network security [H04W 12/06](#))}
- 21/25883 . . . . . {being end-user demographical data, e.g. age, family status or address (arrangements for identifying locations of users in broadcast systems [H04H 60/52](#))}
- 21/25891 . . . . . {being end-user preferences (retrieval of video data in a video database based on user preferences [G06F 16/739](#); arrangements for recognizing users' preferences [H04H 60/46](#); user profiles in network data switching protocols [H04L 67/306](#); processing of user preferences or user profiles in wireless networks [H04W 8/18](#))}
- 21/262 . . . . . Content or additional data distribution scheduling, e.g. sending additional data at off-peak times, updating software modules, calculating the carousel transmission frequency, delaying a video stream transmission, generating play-lists {(scheduling strategies for dispatcher in multiprogramming arrangements [G06F 9/4881](#); arrangements for scheduling broadcast services or broadcast-related services [H04H 60/06](#); flow control in packet networks [H04L 47/10](#); establishing a time schedule or organising the servicing of application requests [H04L 67/62](#))}
- 21/26208 . . . . . {the scheduling operation being performed under constraints}
- 21/26216 . . . . . {involving the channel capacity, e.g. network bandwidth (admission control, resource allocation in open networks [H04L 12/5692](#); flow control in packet networks [H04L 47/10](#); establishing a schedule or organising the servicing of application requests taking into account QoS [H04L 67/61](#))}
- 21/26225 . . . . . {involving billing parameters, e.g. priority for subscribers of premium services}
- 21/26233 . . . . . {involving content or additional data duration or size, e.g. length of a movie, size of an executable file}
- 21/26241 . . . . . {involving the time of distribution, e.g. the best time of the day for inserting an advertisement or airing a children program}
- 21/2625 . . . . . {for delaying content or additional data distribution, e.g. because of an extended sport event}
- 21/26258 . . . . . {for generating a list of items to be played back in a given order, e.g. playlist, or scheduling item distribution according to such list (retrieval of multimedia data based on playlists [G06F 16/40](#))}
- 21/26266 . . . . . {for determining content or additional data repetition rate, e.g. of a file in a DVB carousel according to its importance (arrangements for broadcast or for distribution of identical information repeatedly in broadcast distribution systems [H04H 20/16](#))}
- 21/26275 . . . . . {for distributing content or additional data in a staggered manner, e.g. repeating movies on different channels in a time-staggered manner in a near video on demand system}
- 21/26283 . . . . . {for associating distribution time parameters to content, e.g. to generate electronic program guide data}
- 21/26291 . . . . . {for providing content or additional data updates, e.g. updating software modules, stored at the client (deployment, distribution, installation, update of software [G06F 8/65](#); error detection or correction during software upgrading [G06F 11/1433](#); arrangements for updating broadcast information or broadcast-related information [H04H 60/25](#))}

- 21/266 . . . Channel or content management, e.g. generation and management of keys and entitlement messages in a conditional access system, merging a VOD unicast channel into a multicast channel
- 21/26603 . . . . {for automatically generating descriptors from content, e.g. when it is not made available by its provider, using content analysis techniques}
- 21/26606 . . . . {for generating or managing entitlement messages, e.g. Entitlement Control Message [ECM] or Entitlement Management Message [EMM] (arrangements for conditional access to broadcast information or to broadcast-related services [H04H 60/14](#))}
- 21/26609 . . . . . {using retrofitting techniques, e.g. by re-encrypting the control words used for pre-encryption}
- 21/26613 . . . . . {for generating or managing keys in general (key distribution for secret or secure communication involving central third party, e.g. key distribution center [KDC] or trusted third party [TTP] [H04L 9/083](#); network support of key management [H04L 63/06](#); key management for network security in communication control or processing [H04W 12/04](#))}
- 21/26616 . . . . . {for merging a unicast channel into a multicast channel, e.g. in a VOD application, when a client served by unicast channel catches up a multicast channel to save bandwidth (data multicast over packet-switching network [H04L 12/18](#))}
- 21/2662 . . . . Controlling the complexity of the video stream, e.g. by scaling the resolution or bitrate of the video stream based on the client capabilities
- 21/2665 . . . . Gathering content from different sources, e.g. Internet and satellite
- 21/2668 . . . . Creating a channel for a dedicated end-user group, e.g. insertion of targeted commercials based on end-user profiles {(information retrieval from the Internet by querying with filtering and personalisation [G06F 16/9535](#); arrangements for replacing or switching information during the broadcast [H04H 20/10](#); push services over packet-switching network [H04L 12/1859](#); adaptation of message content in packet-switching networks [H04L 51/063](#))}
- 21/27 . . Server based end-user applications
- 21/274 . . . Storing end-user {multimedia} data in response to end-user request {, e.g. network recorder}
- 21/2743 . . . . Video hosting of uploaded data from client
- 21/2747 . . . . Remote storage of video programs received via the downstream path, e.g. from the server
- 21/278 . . . Content descriptor database or directory service for end-user access {(details of content or meta data based information retrieval of video data in video databases [G06F 16/739](#))}
- 21/40 . . Client devices specifically adapted for the reception of or interaction with content, e.g. set-top-box [STB]; Operations thereof
- 21/41 . . Structure of client; Structure of client peripherals
- 21/4104 . . . . {Peripherals receiving signals from specially adapted client devices}
- 21/4108 . . . . . {characterised by an identification number or address, e.g. local network address (protecting specific internal or external computer components using identification number [G06F 21/73](#); network arrangements, protocols or services for addressing or naming [H04L 61/00](#))}
- 21/411 . . . . . {having similar hardware or software capabilities as the client device itself, e.g. a first STB connected to a second STB}
- 21/4112 . . . . . {having fewer capabilities than the client, e.g. thin client having less processing power or no tuning capabilities}
- 21/4113 . . . . . {PC}
- 21/4117 . . . . . {for generating hard copies of the content, e.g. printer, electronic paper (interfaces to printers [G06F 3/12](#); printing data [G06K 15/02](#))}
- 21/4122 . . . . . {additional display device, e.g. video projector (digital output for controlling a plurality of local displays [G06F 3/1423](#))}
- 21/4126 . . . . . {The peripheral being portable, e.g. PDAs or mobile phones}
- 21/41265 . . . . . {having a remote control device for bidirectional communication between the remote control device and client device (unidirectional remote control device [H04N 21/42204](#))}
- 21/4131 . . . . . {home appliance, e.g. lighting, air conditioning system, metering devices (home automation data switching networks exchanging configuration information on appliance services [H04L 12/2807](#))}
- 21/4135 . . . . . {external recorder (interface circuits between an apparatus for recording television signals and a television receiver [H04N 5/775](#))}
- 21/414 . . . Specialised client platforms, e.g. receiver in car or embedded in a mobile appliance
- 21/41407 . . . . . {embedded in a portable device, e.g. video client on a mobile phone, PDA, laptop (constructional details of equipment or arrangements specially adapted for portable computer application [G06F 1/1626](#); arrangements specially adapted for mobile receivers in broadcast systems [H04H 20/57](#))}
- 21/41415 . . . . . {involving a public display, viewable by several users in a public space outside their home, e.g. movie theatre, information kiosk}
- 21/41422 . . . . . {located in transportation means, e.g. personal vehicle (arrangements specially adapted for transportation systems in broadcast systems [H04H 20/62](#))}
- 21/4143 . . . . . {embedded in a} Personal Computer [PC]
- 21/4147 . . . . . PVR [Personal Video Recorder] ([H04N 5/76](#) takes precedence {; arrangements for broadcast with accumulation-type receivers [H04H 20/40](#))}
- 21/418 . . . External card to be used in combination with the client device, e.g. for conditional access
- 21/4181 . . . . . {for conditional access}



21/4182	. . . .	{for identification purposes, e.g. storing user identification data, preferences, personal settings or data ( <a href="#">restricting access to computer systems by authenticating users using a predetermined code in combination with an additional device, e.g. dongle or smart card G06F 21/123</a> )}	21/4222	. . . . .	{Remote control device emulator integrated into a non-television apparatus, e.g. a PDA, media center or smart toy ( <a href="#">remote control device for a television receiver integrated into a mobile phone H04M 1/72415</a> )}
21/4183	. . . .	{providing its own processing capabilities, e.g. external module for video decoding}	21/42221	. . . . .	{Transmission circuitry, e.g. infrared [IR] or radio frequency [RF]}
21/4184	. . . .	{providing storage capabilities, e.g. memory stick}	21/42222	. . . . .	{Additional components integrated in the remote control device, e.g. timer, speaker, sensors for detecting position, direction or movement of the remote control, microphone or battery charging device}
21/4185	. . . .	for payment	21/42224	. . . . .	{Touch pad or touch panel provided on the remote control}
21/422	. . .	Input-only peripherals {, i.e. input devices connected to specially adapted client devices}, e.g. global positioning system [GPS] {(input devices also receiving signals from specially adapted client devices <a href="#">H04N 21/4104</a> )}	21/42225	. . . . .	{characterized by types of remote control, e.g. universal remote control}
21/42201	. . . .	{biosensors, e.g. heat sensor for presence detection, EEG sensors or any limb activity sensors worn by the user ( <a href="#">input arrangements for interaction with the human body based on nervous system activity detection G06F 3/015</a> )}	21/42226	. . . . .	{Reprogrammable remote control devices}
21/42202	. . . .	{environmental sensors, e.g. for detecting temperature, luminosity, pressure, earthquakes}	21/42227	. . . . .	{the keys being reprogrammable, e.g. soft keys}
21/42203	. . . .	{sound input device, e.g. microphone}	21/42228	. . . . .	{the reprogrammable keys being displayed on a display screen in order to reduce the number of keys on the remote control device itself}
21/42204	. . . .	{User interfaces specially adapted for controlling a client device through a remote control device; Remote control devices therefor ( <a href="#">constructive details of casings for the remote control device H01H 9/0235</a> ; user interfaces for controlling a tuning device of a television receiver through a remote control <a href="#">H03J 9/00</a> ; remote control of peripheral devices connected to a television receiver through the remote control device of the television receiver <a href="#">H04B 1/205</a> )}	21/4223	. . . .	Cameras ( <a href="#">H04N 23/00 takes precedence</a> )
21/42206	. . . . .	{characterized by hardware details}	21/4227	. . . .	{Providing} Remote input by a user located remotely from the client device, e.g. at work
21/42208	. . . . .	{Display device provided on the remote control}	21/426	. . .	Internal components of the client {; Characteristics thereof} ( <a href="#">H04N 5/44 takes precedence</a> )
21/42209	. . . . .	{for displaying non-command information, e.g. electronic program guide [EPG], e-mail, messages or a second television channel}	21/42607	. . . .	{for processing the incoming bitstream}
21/4221	. . . . .	{Dedicated function buttons, e.g. for the control of an EPG, subtitles, aspect ratio, picture-in-picture or teletext}	21/42615	. . . . .	{involving specific demultiplexing arrangements}
21/42212	. . . . .	{Specific keyboard arrangements}	21/42623	. . . . .	{involving specific decryption arrangements}
21/42213	. . . . .	{for facilitating data entry}	21/4263	. . . . .	{involving specific tuning arrangements, e.g. two tuners}
21/42214	. . . . .	{using alphanumerical characters}	21/42638	. . . . .	{involving a hybrid front-end, e.g. analog and digital tuners}
21/42215	. . . . .	{by measuring the time interval during which a key is pressed, e.g. for inputting sequences of digits when selecting a television channel}	21/42646	. . . .	{for reading from or writing on a non-volatile solid state storage medium, e.g. DVD, CD-ROM}
21/42216	. . . . .	{for quick navigation, e.g. through an EPG}	21/42653	. . . .	{for processing graphics}
21/42218	. . . . .	{for mapping a matrix of displayed objects on the screen to the numerical key-matrix of the remote control}	21/42661	. . . .	{for reading from or writing on a magnetic storage medium, e.g. hard disk drive}
			21/42669	. . . . .	{the medium being removable}
			21/42676	. . . .	{for modulating an analogue carrier signal to encode digital information or demodulating it to decode digital information, e.g. ADSL or cable modem}
			21/42684	. . . .	{Client identification by a unique number or address, e.g. serial number, MAC address, socket ID ( <a href="#">network arrangements, protocols or services for addressing or naming H04L 61/00</a> )}
			21/42692	. . . .	{for reading from or writing on a volatile storage medium, e.g. Random Access Memory [RAM]}

- 21/43 . . . Processing of content or additional data, e.g. demultiplexing additional data from a digital video stream; Elementary client operations, e.g. monitoring of home network or synchronising decoder's clock; Client middleware [{\(real-time communication protocols in data switching networks H04L 65/00\)}](#)
- 21/4302 . . . {Content synchronisation processes, e.g. decoder synchronisation}
- 21/4305 . . . . {Synchronising client clock from received content stream, e.g. locking decoder clock with encoder clock, extraction of the PCR packets [\(arrangements for synchronising receiver with transmitter by comparing receiver clock with transmitter clock H04L 7/0012; arrangements for synchronising receiver with transmitter wherein the receiver takes measures against momentary loss of synchronisation H04L 7/0083\)}](#)
- 21/4307 . . . . {Synchronising the rendering of multiple content streams or additional data on devices, e.g. synchronisation of audio on a mobile phone with the video output on the TV screen}
- 21/43072 . . . . {of multiple content streams on the same device}
- 21/43074 . . . . {of additional data with content streams on the same device, e.g. of EPG data or interactive icon with a TV program}
- 21/43076 . . . . {of the same content streams on multiple devices, e.g. when family members are watching the same movie on different devices}
- 21/43078 . . . . {for seamlessly watching content streams when changing device, e.g. when watching the same program sequentially on a TV and then on a tablet}
- 21/43079 . . . . {of additional data with content streams on multiple devices}
- 21/431 . . . Generation of visual interfaces {for content selection or interaction}; Content or additional data rendering
- 21/4312 . . . . {involving specific graphical features, e.g. screen layout, special fonts or colors, blinking icons, highlights or animations}
- 21/4314 . . . . {for fitting data in a restricted space on the screen, e.g. EPG data in a rectangular grid}
- 21/4316 . . . . {for displaying supplemental content in a region of the screen, e.g. an advertisement in a separate window}
- 21/4318 . . . . {by altering the content in the rendering process, e.g. blanking, blurring or masking an image region [\(image enhancement or restoration in general G06T 5/00\)}](#)
- 21/432 . . . Content retrieval operation from a local storage medium, e.g. hard-disk [{\(details of retrieval of video data and associated meta data in video databases G06F 16/739\)}](#)
- 21/4325 . . . . {by playing back content from the storage medium [\(reproduction of recorded television signals H04N 5/76; reproduction of recorded television signals H04N 9/79\)}](#)
- 21/433 . . . Content storage operation, e.g. storage operation in response to a pause request, caching operations
- 21/4331 . . . . {Caching operations, e.g. of an advertisement for later insertion during playback}
- 21/4332 . . . . {by placing content in organized collections, e.g. local EPG data repository [\(interfaces, Database management systems or updating for information retrieval G06F 16/23; details of retrieval of video data and associated meta data in video database G06F 16/739\)}](#)
- 21/4333 . . . . {Processing operations in response to a pause request}
- 21/4334 . . . . {Recording operations [\(recording of a television signal H04N 5/76; arrangements for recording or accumulating broadcast information or broadcast-related information H04H 60/27\)}](#)
- 21/4335 . . . . Housekeeping operations, e.g. prioritizing content for deletion because of storage space restrictions [{\(storage management, e.g. defragmentation G06F 3/0604; unloading stored programs G06F 9/445; storage management in file systems G06F 16/10; buffering arrangements in a network node or in an end terminal in packet networks H04L 49/90\)}](#)
- 21/434 . . . Disassembling of a multiplex stream, e.g. demultiplexing audio and video streams, extraction of additional data from a video stream; Remultiplexing of multiplex streams; Extraction or processing of SI; Disassembling of packetised elementary stream [{\(demultiplexing of data packets for data networks, e.g. RTP/UDP H04L 65/00\)}](#)
- 21/4341 . . . . {Demultiplexing of audio and video streams}
- 21/4342 . . . . {Demultiplexing isochronously with video sync, e.g. according to bit-parallel or bit-serial interface formats, as SDI}
- 21/4343 . . . . {Extraction or processing of packetized elementary streams [PES]}
- 21/4344 . . . . {Remultiplexing of multiplex streams, e.g. by modifying time stamps or remapping the packet identifiers}
- 21/4345 . . . . {Extraction or processing of SI, e.g. extracting service information from an MPEG stream}
- 21/4346 . . . . {involving stuffing data, e.g. packets or bytes [\(synchronisation arrangements in time-division multiplex systems with different or fluctuating information rates H04J 3/073\)}](#)
- 21/4347 . . . . {Demultiplexing of several video streams}
- 21/4348 . . . . {Demultiplexing of additional data and video streams}
- 21/4349 . . . . . {by extracting from data carousels, e.g. extraction of software modules from a DVB carousel}
- 21/435 . . . Processing of additional data, e.g. decrypting of additional data, reconstructing software from modules extracted from the transport stream
- 21/4351 . . . . {involving reassembling additional data, e.g. rebuilding an executable program from recovered modules}

- 21/4353 . . . . {involving decryption of additional data (arrangements using cryptography for the use of broadcast information or broadcast-related information [H04H 60/23](#))}
- 21/4355 . . . . {involving reformatting operations of additional data, e.g. HTML pages on a television screen (optimising the visualization of content for information retrieval from the Internet [G06F 16/9577](#); adaptation of message content in packet-switching networks [H04L 51/066](#); media handling at the source in data packet switching networks [H04L 65/764](#))}
- 21/4356 . . . . {by altering the spatial resolution, e.g. to reformat additional data on a handheld device, attached to the STB}
- 21/4358 . . . . {for generating different versions, e.g. for different peripheral devices}
- 21/436 . . . Interfacing a local distribution network, e.g. communicating with another STB {or one or more peripheral devices} inside the home
- 21/43607 . . . . {Interfacing a plurality of external cards, e.g. through a DVB Common Interface [DVB-CI]}
- 21/43615 . . . . {Interfacing a Home Network, e.g. for connecting the client to a plurality of peripherals (home Audio Video Interoperability [HAVI] data switching networks [H04L 12/2805](#))}
- 21/43622 . . . . {Interfacing an external recording device}
- 21/4363 . . . . Adapting the video stream to a specific local network, e.g. a Bluetooth® network
- 21/43632 . . . . {involving a wired protocol, e.g. IEEE 1394 (high-speed IEEE 1394 serial bus [H04L 12/40052](#))}
- 21/43635 . . . . {HDMI}
- 21/43637 . . . . {involving a wireless protocol, e.g. Bluetooth, RF or wireless LAN [IEEE 802.11] (arrangements for wireless networking or broadcasting of information in indoor or near-field type systems [H04B 10/114](#))}
- 21/4367 . . . . Establishing a secure communication between the client and a peripheral device or smart card
- 21/437 . . . Interfacing the upstream path of the transmission network, e.g. for transmitting client requests to a VOD server {(flow control in data networks [H04L 47/10](#); streaming protocols, e.g. RTP or RTCP, [H04L 65/65](#); scheduling or organising the servicing of application requests in data packet switching networks [H04L 67/60](#))}
- 21/438 . . . Interfacing the downstream path of the transmission network originating from a server, e.g. retrieving encoded video stream packets from an IP network
- 21/4381 . . . . {Recovering the multiplex stream from a specific network, e.g. recovering MPEG packets from ATM cells (transmission of MPEG streams over ATM [H04L 12/5601](#))}
- 21/4382 . . . . {Demodulation or channel decoding, e.g. QPSK demodulation (analog front ends or means for connecting modulators, demodulators or transceivers to a transmission line [H04L 27/0002](#))}
- 21/4383 . . . . {Accessing a communication channel}
- 21/4384 . . . . {involving operations to reduce the access time, e.g. fast-tuning for reducing channel switching latency}
- 21/4385 . . . . Multiplex stream processing, e.g. multiplex stream decrypting
- 21/43853 . . . . {involving multiplex stream decryption (arrangements using cryptography for the use of broadcast information or broadcast-related information [H04H 60/23](#))}
- 21/43856 . . . . {by partial decryption, e.g. decrypting a multiplex stream that has been partially encrypted}
- 21/439 . . . Processing of audio elementary streams
- 21/4392 . . . . {involving audio buffer management}
- 21/4394 . . . . {involving operations for analysing the audio stream, e.g. detecting features or characteristics in audio streams (arrangements characterised by components specially adapted for monitoring, identification or recognition of audio in broadcast systems [H04H 60/58](#))}
- 21/4396 . . . . {by muting the audio signal}
- 21/4398 . . . . {involving reformatting operations of audio signals (details of audio signal transcoding [G10L 19/173](#))}
- 21/44 . . . Processing of video elementary streams, e.g. splicing a video clip retrieved from local storage with an incoming video stream or rendering scenes according to encoded video stream scene graphs
- 21/44004 . . . . {involving video buffer management, e.g. video decoder buffer or video display buffer}
- 21/44008 . . . . {involving operations for analysing video streams, e.g. detecting features or characteristics in the video stream (arrangements characterised by components specially adapted for monitoring, identification or recognition of video in broadcast systems [H04H 60/59](#))}
- 21/44012 . . . . {involving rendering scenes according to scene graphs, e.g. MPEG-4 scene graphs}
- 21/44016 . . . . {involving splicing one content stream with another content stream, e.g. for substituting a video clip}
- 21/4402 . . . . involving reformatting operations of video signals for household redistribution, storage or real-time display {(details of conversion of video standards at pixel level [H04N 7/01](#); video transcoding [H04N 19/40](#); adapting incoming signals to the display format of the display terminal [G09G 5/005](#); media handling at the source in data packet switching networks [H04L 65/764](#))}
- 21/440209 . . . . {for formatting on an optical medium, e.g. DVD}
- 21/440218 . . . . {by transcoding between formats or standards, e.g. from MPEG-2 to MPEG-4 (conversion of standards in analogue television systems [H04N 7/01](#))}

- 21/440227 . . . . . {by decomposing into layers, e.g. base layer and one or more enhancement layers}
- 21/440236 . . . . . {by media transcoding, e.g. video is transformed into a slideshow of still pictures, audio is converted into text}
- 21/440245 . . . . . {the reformatting operation being performed only on part of the stream, e.g. a region of the image or a time segment}
- 21/440254 . . . . . {by altering signal-to-noise parameters, e.g. requantization}
- 21/440263 . . . . . {by altering the spatial resolution, e.g. for displaying on a connected PDA}
- 21/440272 . . . . . {for performing aspect ratio conversion}
- 21/440281 . . . . . {by altering the temporal resolution, e.g. by frame skipping (television signal recording using magnetic recording on tape for reproducing at a rate different from the recording rate [H04N 5/783](#))}
- 21/44029 . . . . . {for generating different versions}
- 21/4405 . . . . . involving video stream decryption
- 21/44055 . . . . . {by partially decrypting, e.g. decrypting a video stream that has been partially encrypted}
- 21/4408 . . . . . involving video stream encryption, e.g. re-encrypting a decrypted video stream for redistribution in a home network
- 21/441 . . . . . Acquiring end-user identification {, e.g. using personal code sent by the remote control or by inserting a card}
- 21/4415 . . . . . using biometric characteristics of the user, e.g. by voice recognition or fingerprint scanning {(cryptography using biological data [H04L 9/3231](#); authentication in networks using biometric [H04L 63/0861](#))}
- 21/442 . . . . . Monitoring of processes or resources, e.g. detecting the failure of a recording device, monitoring the downstream bandwidth, the number of times a movie has been viewed, the storage space available from the internal hard disk {(arrangements for monitoring broadcast services or broadcast-related services [H04H 60/29](#); arrangements for identifying or recognising characteristics with a direct linkage to broadcast information [H04H 60/35](#); monitoring of user activities for profile generation for accessing a video database [G06F 16/739](#); monitoring in wireless networks [H04W 24/00](#))}
- 21/44204 . . . . . {Monitoring of content usage, e.g. the number of times a movie has been viewed, copied or the amount which has been watched (monitoring of user activities for profile generation for accessing a video database [G06F 16/739](#); protecting generic digital content where the protection is independent of the precise nature of the content [G06F 21/10](#); arrangements for monitoring the use made of the broadcast services in broadcast systems [H04H 60/31](#))}
- 21/44209 . . . . . {Monitoring of downstream path of the transmission network originating from a server, e.g. bandwidth variations of a wireless network (arrangements for maintenance or administration in data switching networks involving bandwidth and capacity management [H04L 41/0896](#))}
- 21/44213 . . . . . {Monitoring of end-user related data (arrangements for monitoring the users' behaviour or opinions in broadcast systems [H04H 60/33](#))}
- 21/44218 . . . . . {Detecting physical presence or behaviour of the user, e.g. using sensors to detect if the user is leaving the room or changes his face expression during a TV program (methods or arrangements for recognising human body or animal bodies or body parts [G06V 40/10](#); methods or arrangements for acquiring or recognising human faces, facial parts, facial sketches, facial expressions [G06V 40/16](#); methods or arrangements for recognising movements or behaviour [G06V 40/20](#); arrangements for identifying users in broadcast systems [H04H 60/45](#))}
- 21/44222 . . . . . {Analytics of user selections, e.g. selection of programs or purchase activity (monitoring of user selections in data processing systems [G06F 11/34](#); arrangements for monitoring the user's behaviour or opinions in broadcast systems [H04H 60/33](#))}
- 21/44224 . . . . . {Monitoring of user activity on external systems, e.g. Internet browsing}
- 21/44226 . . . . . {on social networks}
- 21/44227 . . . . . {Monitoring of local network, e.g. connection or bandwidth variations; Detecting new devices in the local network (configuring of peripheral devices in general [G06F 9/4411](#); monitoring connectivity in data switched networks [H04L 43/0811](#))}
- 21/44231 . . . . . {Monitoring of peripheral device or external card, e.g. to detect processing problems in a handheld device or the failure of an external recording device (configuring of peripheral devices in general [G06F 9/4411](#); reporting information sensed by appliance or service execution status of appliance services in a home automation network [H04L 12/2823](#); monitoring the status of connected device in data switched networks [H04L 43/0817](#))}
- 21/44236 . . . . . {Monitoring of piracy processes or activities (protecting computer platforms against harmful, malicious or unexpected behaviour or activities using intrusion detection and counter measures [G06F 21/566](#); computer virus detection and handling [G06F 21/56](#))}



- 21/4424 . . . . {Monitoring of the internal components or processes of the client device, e.g. CPU or memory load, processing speed, timer, counter or percentage of the hard disk space used (error monitoring in general [G06F 11/30](#); arrangements for monitoring conditions of receiving stations in broadcast systems [H04H 60/32](#); diagnosis, testing or measuring for television receivers [H04N 17/04](#))}
- 21/44245 . . . . {Monitoring the upstream path of the transmission network, e.g. its availability, bandwidth}
- 21/4425 . . . . Monitoring of client processing errors or hardware failure
- 21/443 . . . . OS processes, e.g. booting an STB, implementing a Java virtual machine in an STB or power management in an STB
- 21/4431 . . . . {characterized by the use of Application Program Interface [API] libraries}
- 21/4432 . . . . {Powering on the client, e.g. bootstrap loading using setup parameters being stored locally or received from the server (resetting in general [G06F 1/14](#); program loading or initiating in general [G06F 9/445](#); bootstrapping in general [G06F 9/4401](#); secure boots of computer platforms [G06F 21/57](#))}
- 21/4433 . . . . {Implementing client middleware, e.g. Multimedia Home Platform [MHP]}
- 21/4435 . . . . {Memory management (allocation of memory to service a request [G06F 9/5016](#); addressing or allocating within memory systems or architectures [G06F 12/02](#))}
- 21/4436 . . . . {Power management, e.g. shutting down unused components of the receiver (power management in computer systems [G06F 1/3203](#); hibernate or awake process in computer systems [G06F 9/4418](#))}
- 21/4437 . . . . {Implementing a Virtual Machine [VM] (virtual machines in general [G06F 9/45533](#))}
- 21/4438 . . . . {Window management, e.g. event handling following interaction with the user interface}
- 21/45 . . . . Management operations performed by the client for facilitating the reception of or the interaction with the content or administrating data related to the end-user or to the client device itself, e.g. learning user preferences for recommending movies, resolving scheduling conflicts
- 21/4508 . . . . {Management of client data or end-user data}
- 21/4516 . . . . {involving client characteristics, e.g. Set-Top-Box type, software version or amount of memory available}
- 21/4518 . . . . {involving characteristics of one or more peripherals, e.g. peripheral type, software version, amount of memory available or display capabilities}
- 21/4524 . . . . {involving the geographical location of the client (retrieval from the Internet by querying based on geographical locations [G06F 16/9537](#); systems specially adapted for using geographical information in broadcast systems [H04H 60/70](#); protocols in which the network application is adapted for the location of the user terminal in communication control or processing [H04L 67/52](#); services making use of the location of users or terminals in wireless networks [H04W 4/02](#); locating users or terminals in wireless networks [H04W 64/00](#))}
- 21/4532 . . . . {involving end-user characteristics, e.g. viewer profile, preferences (monitoring of user activities for profile generation for accessing a video database [G06F 16/739](#); user profiles in network data switching protocols [H04L 67/306](#); processing of user preferences or user profiles in wireless networks [H04W 8/18](#))}
- 21/454 . . . . Content {or additional data} filtering, e.g. blocking advertisements
- 21/4542 . . . . {Blocking scenes or portions of the received content, e.g. censoring scenes}
- 21/4545 . . . . Input to filtering algorithms, e.g. filtering a region of the image
- 21/45452 . . . . . {applied to an object-based stream, e.g. MPEG-4 streams}
- 21/45455 . . . . . {applied to a region of the image}
- 21/45457 . . . . . {applied to a time segment}
- 21/458 . . . . Scheduling content for creating a personalised stream, e.g. by combining a locally stored advertisement with an incoming stream; Updating operations, e.g. for OS modules {; time-related management operations (arrangements for replacing or switching information during the broadcast or during the distribution [H04H 20/10](#))}
- 21/4583 . . . . {Automatically resolving scheduling conflicts, e.g. when a recording by reservation has been programmed for two programs in the same time slot}
- 21/4586 . . . . {Content update operation triggered locally, e.g. by comparing the version of software modules in a DVB carousel to the version stored locally (deployment, distribution, installation, update of software [G06F 8/65](#); error detection or correction of the data by redundancy during software upgrading [G06F 11/1433](#); arrangements for updating broadcast information or broadcast-related information [H04H 60/25](#))}
- 21/462 . . . . Content or additional data management, e.g. creating a master electronic program guide from data received from the Internet and a Head-end, controlling the complexity of a video stream by scaling the resolution or bit-rate based on the client capabilities

- 21/4621 . . . . {Controlling the complexity of the content stream or additional data, e.g. lowering the resolution or bit-rate of the video stream for a mobile client with a small screen (arrangements for using the results of monitoring on user's side in broadcast systems [H04H 60/65](#); flow control in packet networks [H04L 47/10](#))}
- 21/4622 . . . . {Retrieving content or additional data from different sources, e.g. from a broadcast channel and the Internet (web site content organization and management for information retrieval from the Internet [G06F 16/958](#); transmission by internet of broadcast information [H04H 60/82](#); stock exchange data over packet-switching network [H04L 12/1804](#); push services including data channel over packet-switching network [H04L 12/1859](#))}
- 21/4623 . . . . Processing of entitlement messages, e.g. ECM [Entitlement Control Message] or EMM [Entitlement Management Message] {(arrangements for conditional access to broadcast information or to broadcast-related services [H04H 60/14](#))}
- 21/4627 . . . . Rights management {associated to the content (security in data switching network management [H04L 41/28](#); security management or policies for network security [H04L 63/20](#); access security in wireless networks [H04W 12/08](#))}
- 21/466 . . . Learning process for intelligent management, e.g. learning user preferences for recommending movies {(services using the results of monitoring in broadcast systems [H04H 60/61](#))}
- 21/4661 . . . . {Deriving a combined profile for a plurality of end-users of the same client, e.g. for family members within a home (user profiles in network data switching protocols [H04L 67/306](#))}
- 21/4662 . . . . {characterized by learning algorithms}
- 21/4663 . . . . {involving probabilistic networks, e.g. Bayesian networks}
- 21/4665 . . . . {involving classification methods, e.g. Decision trees}
- 21/4666 . . . . {using neural networks, e.g. processing the feedback provided by the user}
- 21/4667 . . . . {Processing of monitored end-user data, e.g. trend analysis based on the log file of viewer selections}
- 21/4668 . . . . {for recommending content, e.g. movies}
- 21/47 . . End-user applications
- 21/472 . . . End-user interface for requesting content, additional data or services; End-user interface for interacting with content, e.g. for content reservation or setting reminders, for requesting event notification, for manipulating displayed content {(end-user interfaces for retrieving video data from a database [G06F 16/739](#); network services for supporting unicast streaming [H04L 65/612](#))}
- 21/47202 . . . . {for requesting content on demand, e.g. video on demand}
- 21/47205 . . . . {for manipulating displayed content, e.g. interacting with MPEG-4 objects, editing locally}
- 21/47208 . . . . {for requesting near-video-on-demand content}
- 21/47211 . . . . {for requesting pay-per-view content (payment schemes payment architectures or payment protocols [G06Q 20/00](#), [G07F](#))}
- 21/47214 . . . . {for content reservation or setting reminders; for requesting event notification, e.g. of sport results or stock market (stock exchange data over packet-switching network [H04L 12/1804](#); push services over packet-switching network [H04L 12/1859](#); notification of incoming messages in packet switching networks [H04L 51/224](#))}
- 21/47217 . . . . {for controlling playback functions for recorded or on-demand content, e.g. using progress bars, mode or play-point indicators or bookmarks (specific graphical features in visual interfaces [H04N 21/4312](#))}
- 21/4722 . . . . for requesting additional data associated with the content
- 21/4725 . . . . . using interactive regions of the image, e.g. hot spots {(details of information retrieval from the Internet by using URLs [G06F 16/955](#); processing chained hypermedia data for information retrieval [G06F 16/94](#))}
- 21/4728 . . . . for selecting a Region Of Interest [ROI], e.g. for requesting a higher resolution version of a selected region
- 21/475 . . . End-user interface for inputting end-user data, e.g. personal identification number [PIN], preference data
- 21/4751 . . . . {for defining user accounts, e.g. accounts for children}
- 21/4753 . . . . {for user identification, e.g. by entering a PIN or password (cryptographic authentication protocols [H04L 9/32](#); networks authentication protocols [H04L 63/08](#))}
- 21/4755 . . . . {for defining user preferences, e.g. favourite actors or genre (retrieval personalisation and generation of user profiles for the retrieval of video data [G06F 16/739](#); user profiles in network data switching protocols [H04L 67/306](#))}
- 21/4756 . . . . {for rating content, e.g. scoring a recommended movie}
- 21/4758 . . . . {for providing answers, e.g. voting}
- 21/478 . . . Supplemental services, e.g. displaying phone caller identification, shopping application
- 21/47805 . . . . {Electronic banking (banking in general [G06Q 30/02](#))}
- 21/4781 . . . . {Games}
- 21/47815 . . . . {Electronic shopping (payment schemes, payment architectures or payment protocols for electronic shopping systems [G06Q 20/12](#))}
- 21/4782 . . . . Web browsing {, e.g. WebTV}
- 21/4784 . . . . receiving rewards
- 21/4786 . . . . e-mailing {(message switching systems, e.g. electronic mail systems [H04L 51/00](#))}

- 21/4788 . . . . communicating with other users, e.g. chatting {(arrangements for providing for computer conferences, e.g. chat rooms, to substation in data switching networks [H04L 12/1813](#); distributed application using peer-to-peer [P2P] networks [H04L 67/104](#))}
- 21/482 . . . . End-user interface for program selection {(broadcast systems using EPGs [H04H 60/72](#))}
- 21/4821 . . . . {using a grid, e.g. sorted out by channel and broadcast time}
- 21/4823 . . . . {using a channel name}
- 21/4825 . . . . {using a list of items to be played back in a given order, e.g. playlists}
- 21/4826 . . . . {using recommendation lists, e.g. of programs or channels sorted out according to their score}
- 21/4828 . . . . {for searching program descriptors (retrieval of video data [G06F 16/739](#))}
- 21/485 . . . . End-user interface for client configuration
- 21/4852 . . . . {for modifying audio parameters, e.g. switching between mono and stereo}
- 21/4854 . . . . {for modifying image parameters, e.g. image brightness, contrast}
- 21/4856 . . . . {for language selection, e.g. for the menu or subtitles}
- 21/4858 . . . . {for modifying screen layout parameters, e.g. fonts, size of the windows}
- 21/488 . . . . Data services, e.g. news ticker {(systems specially adapted for using meteorological information in broadcast systems [H04H 60/71](#))}
- 21/4882 . . . . {for displaying messages, e.g. warnings, reminders (arrangements for providing short real-time information to substation in data switching networks [H04L 12/1895](#))}
- 21/4884 . . . . {for displaying subtitles}
- 21/4886 . . . . {for displaying a ticker, e.g. scrolling banner for news, stock exchange, weather data}
- 21/4888 . . . . {for displaying teletext characters}
- 21/60 . . . . Network structure or processes for video distribution between server and client or between remote clients; Control signalling between clients, server and network components; Transmission of management data between server and client {, e.g. sending from server to client commands for recording incoming content stream}; Communication details between server and client
- 21/61 . . . . Network physical structure; Signal processing ([H04B](#) takes precedence)
- 21/6106 . . . . {specially adapted to the downstream path of the transmission network}
- 21/6112 . . . . {involving terrestrial transmission, e.g. DVB-T}
- 21/6118 . . . . {involving cable transmission, e.g. using a cable modem}
- 21/6125 . . . . {involving transmission via Internet (transmission by internet of broadcast information [H04H 60/82](#))}
- 21/6131 . . . . {involving transmission via a mobile phone network (wireless downlink channel access [H04W 74/006](#))}
- 21/6137 . . . . {involving transmission via a telephone network, e.g. POTS}
- 21/6143 . . . . {involving transmission via a satellite}
- 21/615 . . . . {Signal processing at physical level (signal processing in analog two-way television systems [H04N 7/173](#))}
- 21/6156 . . . . {specially adapted to the upstream path of the transmission network}
- 21/6162 . . . . {involving terrestrial transmission, e.g. DVB-T}
- 21/6168 . . . . {involving cable transmission, e.g. using a cable modem}
- 21/6175 . . . . {involving transmission via Internet (broadcast-related systems characterised by the transmission system being the Internet [H04H 60/82](#))}
- 21/6181 . . . . {involving transmission via a mobile phone network (arrangements for providing broadcast or conference services to substation in data switching networks in combination with wireless systems [H04L 12/189](#); wireless uplink channel access [H04W 74/004](#))}
- 21/6187 . . . . {involving transmission via a telephone network, e.g. POTS}
- 21/6193 . . . . {involving transmission via a satellite (arrangements for data linking, networking or transporting, or for controlling an end to end session in a satellite broadcast system [H04B 7/18526](#))}
- 21/63 . . . . Control signaling {related to video distribution} between client, server and network components; Network processes for video distribution between server and clients {or between remote clients}, e.g. transmitting basic layer and enhancement layers over different transmission paths, setting up a peer-to-peer communication via Internet between remote STB's; Communication protocols; Addressing (real-time session protocols [H04L 65/1101](#); distributed application using peer-to-peer [P2P] networks [H04L 67/104](#))
- 21/631 . . . . {Multimode Transmission, e.g. transmitting basic layers and enhancement layers of the content over different transmission paths or transmitting with different error corrections, different keys or with different transmission protocols}
- 21/632 . . . . {using a connection between clients on a wide area network, e.g. setting up a peer-to-peer communication via Internet for retrieving video segments from the hard-disk of other client devices (broadcast-related systems characterised by transmission among terminal devices [H04H 60/80](#); distributed application using peer-to-peer [P2P] networks [H04L 67/104](#))}
- 21/633 . . . . Control signals issued by server directed to the network components or client {(management of faults, events, alarms in data networks [H04L 41/06](#))}
- 21/6332 . . . . directed to client
- 21/6334 . . . . for authorisation, e.g. by transmitting a key {(wireless communications network key management [H04W 12/04](#); wireless communications network access security [H04W 12/08](#))}

21/63345	. . . . .	{by transmitting keys (key distribution for secret or secure communication <a href="#">H04L 9/08</a> ; network support of key management <a href="#">H04L 63/06</a> )}	21/64715	. . . . .	{Protecting content from unauthorized alteration within the network (verifying the information received for network security in communication control or processing <a href="#">H04L 63/12</a> ; integrity in wireless network security <a href="#">H04W 12/10</a> )}
21/6336	. . . . .	directed to decoder	21/64723	. . . . .	{Monitoring of network processes or resources, e.g. monitoring of network load (traffic related reporting in data switching networks <a href="#">H04L 43/062</a> )}
21/6338	. . . . .	directed to network	21/6473	. . . . .	{Monitoring network processes errors (for recovering from a failure of a protocol instance or entity <a href="#">H04L 69/40</a> )}
21/637	. . . . .	Control signals issued by the client directed to the server or network components	21/64738	. . . . .	{Monitoring network characteristics, e.g. bandwidth, congestion level (data switched network analysis <a href="#">H04L 41/14</a> ; monitoring functioning in data switched networks <a href="#">H04L 43/0817</a> ; flow control in packet networks <a href="#">H04L 47/10</a> )}
21/6371	. . . . .	directed to network	21/64746	. . . . .	{Control signals issued by the network directed to the server or the client}
21/6373	. . . . .	for rate control {, e.g. request to the server to modify its transmission rate (flow control in packet networks <a href="#">H04L 47/10</a> )}	21/64753	. . . . .	{directed to the client}
21/6375	. . . . .	for requesting retransmission {, e.g. of data packets lost or corrupted during transmission from server}(ARQ protocols <a href="#">H04L 1/18</a> ; implementation or adaptation of Internet protocol [IP], of transmission control protocol [TCP] or of user datagram protocol [UDP] <a href="#">H04L 69/16</a> )	21/64761	. . . . .	{directed to the server}
21/6377	. . . . .	directed to server {(one-way streaming services wherein the source is controlled by the destination <a href="#">H04L 65/613</a> )}	21/64769	. . . . .	{for rate control (flow control in packet networks <a href="#">H04L 47/10</a> )}
21/63775	. . . . .	{for uploading keys, e.g. for a client to communicate its public key to the server (key management <a href="#">H04L 9/08</a> ; network support of key management <a href="#">H04L 63/06</a> )}	21/64776	. . . . .	{for requesting retransmission, e.g. of data packets lost or corrupted during transmission from server (ARQ protocols <a href="#">H04L 1/18</a> ; implementation or adaptation of Internet protocol [IP], of transmission control protocol [TCP] or of user datagram protocol [UDP] <a href="#">H04L 69/16</a> )}
21/6379	. . . . .	directed to encoder {, e.g. for requesting a lower encoding rate}	21/64784	. . . . .	{Data processing by the network (data processing in packet switching systems <a href="#">H04L 12/56</a> ; flow control in packet networks <a href="#">H04L 47/10</a> ; intermediate storage or scheduling <a href="#">H04L 49/90</a> ; provisioning of proxy services in data packet switching networks <a href="#">H04L 67/56</a> )}
21/64	. . . . .	Addressing {(network arrangements, protocols or services for addressing or naming <a href="#">H04L 61/00</a> ; support for multicast or broadcast of one-way stream services <a href="#">H04L 65/611</a> )}	21/64792	. . . . .	{Controlling the complexity of the content stream, e.g. by dropping packets (intermediate media network packet handling <a href="#">H04L 65/765</a> ; proxy provisioning conversion or adaptation for reducing the amount or size of exchanged application data <a href="#">H04L 67/5651</a> ; negotiation of resources in wireless networks <a href="#">H04W 28/16</a> )}
21/6402	. . . . .	Address allocation for clients {(address allocation in data networks <a href="#">H04L 61/50</a> )}	21/65	. . . . .	Transmission of management data between client and server
21/6405	. . . . .	Multicasting {(data broadcast and multicast in packet switching networks <a href="#">H04L 12/18</a> )}	21/654	. . . . .	Transmission by server directed to the client
21/6408	. . . . .	Unicasting	21/6543	. . . . .	for forcing some client operations, e.g. recording {(remote booting in general <a href="#">G06F 9/4416</a> )}
21/643	. . . . .	Communication protocols {(network streaming protocols, e.g. real-time transport protocol [RTP] or real-time control protocol [RTCP], <a href="#">H04L 65/65</a> )}	21/6547	. . . . .	comprising parameters, e.g. for client setup
21/64307	. . . . .	{ATM}	21/658	. . . . .	Transmission by the client directed to the server
21/64315	. . . . .	{DVB-H}	21/6581	. . . . .	{Reference data, e.g. a movie identifier for ordering a movie or a product identifier in a home shopping application}
21/64322	. . . . .	{IP}	21/6582	. . . . .	{Data stored in the client, e.g. viewing habits, hardware capabilities, credit card number (arrangements where receivers interact with the broadcast <a href="#">H04H 20/38</a> )}
21/6433	. . . . .	Digital Storage Media - Command and Control Protocol [DSM-CC]			
21/6437	. . . . .	Real-time Transport Protocol [RTP]			
21/647	. . . . .	Control signaling between network components and server or clients; Network processes for video distribution between server and clients, e.g. controlling the quality of the video stream, by dropping packets, protecting content from unauthorised alteration within the network, monitoring of network load, bridging between two different networks, e.g. between IP and wireless {(real-time session protocols <a href="#">H04L 65/1101</a> )}			
21/64707	. . . . .	{for transferring content from a first network to a second network, e.g. between IP and wireless}			



- 21/6583 . . . . Acknowledgement
- 21/6587 . . . . Control parameters, e.g. trick play commands, viewpoint selection
- 21/80 . . . . Generation or processing of content or additional data by content creator independently of the distribution process; Content per se {(arrangements for generating broadcast information [H04H 60/02](#))}
- 21/81 . . . . Monomedia components thereof
- 21/8106 . . . . {involving special audio data, e.g. different tracks for different languages}
- 21/8113 . . . . {comprising music, e.g. song in MP3 format}
- 21/812 . . . . {involving advertisement data ([advertising per se G06Q 30/02](#))}
- 21/8126 . . . . {involving additional data, e.g. news, sports, stocks, weather forecasts}
- 21/8133 . . . . {specifically related to the content, e.g. biography of the actors in a movie, detailed information about an article seen in a video program}
- 21/814 . . . . {comprising emergency warnings (arrangements specially adapted for emergency or urgency in broadcast systems [H04H 20/59](#); arrangements for providing alarms, notifications, alerts to substation in data switching networks [H04L 12/1895](#))}
- 21/8146 . . . . {involving graphical data, e.g. 3D object, 2D graphics}
- 21/8153 . . . . {comprising still images, e.g. texture, background image}
- 21/816 . . . . {involving special video data, e.g. 3D video}
- 21/8166 . . . . {involving executable data, e.g. software (arrangements for executing specific programs [G06F 9/44](#); broadcasting computer programmes in broadcast systems [H04H 20/91](#); involving the movement of software or configuration parameters [H04L 67/34](#))}
- 21/8173 . . . . {End-user applications, e.g. Web browser, game}
- 21/818 . . . . {OS software}
- 21/8186 . . . . {specially adapted to be executed by a peripheral of the client device, e.g. by a reprogrammable remote control}
- 21/8193 . . . . {dedicated tools, e.g. video decoder software or IPMP tool}
- 21/83 . . . . Generation or processing of protective or descriptive data associated with content; Content structuring
- 21/835 . . . . Generation of protective data, e.g. certificates {(protecting software against unauthorised usage in a vending or licensing environment [G06F 21/10](#))}
- 21/8352 . . . . involving content or source identification data, e.g. Unique Material Identifier [UMID]
- 21/8355 . . . . involving usage data, e.g. number of copies or viewings allowed
- 21/83555 . . . . {using a structured language for describing usage rules of the content, e.g. REL}
- 21/8358 . . . . involving watermark {(protecting executable software by watermarking [G06F 21/16](#); image watermarking in general [G06T 1/0021](#); watermarks inserted in still images for transmission purposes [H04N 1/32144](#); inserting watermarks during video coding [H04N 19/467](#))}
- 21/84 . . . . Generation or processing of descriptive data, e.g. content descriptors {(systems specially adapted for using meta-information in broadcast systems [H04H 60/73](#))}
- 21/8402 . . . . {involving a version number, e.g. version number of EPG data (arrangements for version control in computers [G06F 8/71](#))}
- 21/8405 . . . . represented by keywords
- 21/845 . . . . Structuring of content, e.g. decomposing content into time segments
- 21/8451 . . . . {using Advanced Video Coding [AVC]}
- 21/8453 . . . . {by locking or enabling a set of features, e.g. optional functionalities in an executable program}
- 21/8455 . . . . {involving pointers to the content, e.g. pointers to the I-frames of the video stream}
- 21/8456 . . . . {by decomposing the content in the time domain, e.g. in time segments}
- 21/8458 . . . . {involving uncompressed content}
- 21/85 . . . . Assembly of content; Generation of multimedia applications
- 21/854 . . . . Content authoring
- 21/85403 . . . . {by describing the content as an MPEG-21 Digital Item}
- 21/85406 . . . . {involving a specific file format, e.g. MP4 format}
- 21/8541 . . . . involving branching, e.g. to different story endings
- 21/8543 . . . . using a description language, e.g. Multimedia and Hypermedia information coding Expert Group [MHEG], eXtensible Markup Language [XML] {(information retrieval of semistructured data, the underlying structure being taken into account, e.g. mark-up language structure data [G06F 16/80](#))}
- 21/8545 . . . . for generating interactive applications
- 21/8547 . . . . involving timestamps for synchronizing content
- 21/8549 . . . . Creating video summaries, e.g. movie trailer {(retrieval in video databases by using presentations in form of a video summary [G06F 16/739](#))}
- 21/858 . . . . Linking data to content, e.g. by linking an URL to a video object, by creating a hotspot
- 21/8583 . . . . {by creating hot-spots}
- 21/8586 . . . . {by using a URL (processing chained hypermedia data for information retrieval [G06F 16/94](#); information retrieval from the Internet by using URLs [G06F 16/955](#); URL in broadcast information [H04H 20/93](#); Web-based protocols [H04L 67/02](#))}
- 23/00** **Cameras or camera modules comprising electronic image sensors; Control thereof**
- WARNING**
- Group [H04N 23/00](#) is impacted by reclassification into groups [H04N 23/95](#), [H04N 23/955](#) and [H04N 23/958](#).
- All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

23/10	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>for generating image signals from different wavelengths</li> </ul> <p><b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Group <a href="#">H04N 23/10</a> is impacted by reclassification into groups <a href="#">H04N 23/11</a>, <a href="#">H04N 25/10</a> and <a href="#">H04N 25/17</a>.</p> <p>All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.</p>	23/50	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Constructional details</li> </ul>
		23/51	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Housings</li> </ul>
		23/52	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Elements optimising image sensor operation, e.g. for electromagnetic interference [EMI] protection or temperature control by heat transfer or cooling elements</li> </ul>
		23/53	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>of electronic viewfinders, e.g. rotatable or detachable</li> </ul>
		23/531	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>{being rotatable or detachable}</li> </ul>
		23/54	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mounting of pick-up tubes, electronic image sensors, deviation or focusing coils</li> </ul>
23/11	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>for generating image signals from visible and infrared light wavelengths</li> </ul> <p><b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Group <a href="#">H04N 23/11</a> is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group <a href="#">H04N 23/10</a>.</p> <p>Group <a href="#">H04N 23/11</a> is also impacted by reclassification into group <a href="#">H04N 25/131</a>.</p> <p>Groups <a href="#">H04N 23/10</a>, <a href="#">H04N 23/11</a> and <a href="#">H04N 25/131</a> should be considered in order to perform a complete search.</p>	23/55	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Optical parts specially adapted for electronic image sensors; Mounting thereof</li> </ul>
		23/555	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>{for picking-up images in sites, inaccessible due to their dimensions or hazardous conditions, e.g. endoscopes or borescopes}</li> </ul>
		23/56	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>provided with illuminating means</li> </ul>
		23/57	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mechanical or electrical details of cameras or camera modules specially adapted for being embedded in other devices</li> </ul>
		23/58	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Means for changing the camera field of view without moving the camera body, e.g. nutating or panning of optics or image sensors</li> </ul>
23/12	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>with one sensor only</li> </ul>	23/60	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Control of cameras or camera modules</li> </ul>
23/125	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>{Colour sequential image capture, e.g. using a colour wheel}</li> </ul>	23/61	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>based on recognised objects</li> </ul>
23/13	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>with multiple sensors</li> </ul>	23/611	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>where the recognised objects include parts of the human body</li> </ul>
23/15	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Image signal generation with circuitry for avoiding or correcting image misregistration</li> </ul>	23/617	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Upgrading or updating of programs or applications for camera control</li> </ul>
23/16	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Optical arrangements associated therewith, e.g. for beam-splitting or for colour correction</li> </ul>	23/62	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Control of parameters via user interfaces</li> </ul>
23/17	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>using opto-mechanical scanning means only</li> </ul>	23/63	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>by using electronic viewfinders</li> </ul>
23/20	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>for generating image signals from infrared radiation only</li> </ul> <p><b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Groups <a href="#">H04N 23/20</a>, <a href="#">H04N 23/21</a> and <a href="#">H04N 23/23</a> are incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group <a href="#">H04N 5/32</a>.</p> <p>All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.</p>	23/631	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>{Graphical user interfaces [GUI] specially adapted for controlling image capture or setting capture parameters}</li> </ul>
		23/632	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>{for displaying or modifying preview images prior to image capturing, e.g. variety of image resolutions or capturing parameters}</li> </ul>
		23/633	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>{for displaying additional information relating to control or operation of the camera}</li> </ul>
		23/634	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>{Warning indications}</li> </ul>
		23/635	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>{Region indicators; Field of view indicators}</li> </ul>
		23/64	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>{Computer-aided capture of images, e.g. transfer from script file into camera, check of taken image quality, advice or proposal for image composition or decision on when to take image}</li> </ul>
23/21	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>from near infrared [NIR] radiation</li> </ul>	23/65	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Control of camera operation in relation to power supply</li> </ul>
23/23	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>from thermal infrared radiation</li> </ul>	23/651	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>{for reducing power consumption by affecting camera operations, e.g. sleep mode, hibernation mode or power off of selective parts of the camera}</li> </ul>
23/30	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>for generating image signals from X-rays</li> </ul> <p><b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Group <a href="#">H04N 23/30</a> is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group <a href="#">H04N 5/32</a>.</p> <p>Groups <a href="#">H04N 5/32</a> and <a href="#">H04N 23/30</a> should be considered in order to perform a complete search.</p>	23/66	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Remote control of cameras or camera parts, e.g. by remote control devices</li> </ul>
		23/661	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Transmitting camera control signals through networks, e.g. control via the Internet</li> </ul>
23/40	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Circuit details for pick-up tubes</li> </ul>	23/662	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>{by using master/slave camera arrangements for affecting the control of camera image capture, e.g. placing the camera in a desirable condition to capture a desired image}</li> </ul>
23/41	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>{Beam current control}</li> </ul>	23/663	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>for controlling interchangeable camera parts based on electronic image sensor signals</li> </ul>
23/43	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>{during retrace periods, e.g. circuits for ACT tubes or leg suppression}</li> </ul>		
23/45	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>for generating image signals from two or more image sensors being of different type or operating in different modes, e.g. with a CMOS sensor for moving images in combination with a charge-coupled device [CCD] for still images</li> </ul>		

- 23/665 . . {involving internal camera communication with the image sensor, e.g. synchronising or multiplexing SSIS control signals}
  - 23/667 . . Camera operation mode switching, e.g. between still and video, sport and normal or high- and low-resolution modes
  - 23/67 . . Focus control based on electronic image sensor signals
  - 23/671 . . . {in combination with active ranging signals, e.g. using light or sound signals emitted toward objects}
  - 23/672 . . . {based on the phase difference signals}
  - 23/673 . . . {based on contrast or high frequency components of image signals, e.g. hill climbing method}
  - 23/675 . . . {comprising setting of focusing regions}
  - 23/676 . . . {Bracketing for image capture at varying focusing conditions}
  - 23/68 . . for stable pick-up of the scene, e.g. compensating for camera body vibrations
  - 23/681 . . . {Motion detection}
  - 23/6811 . . . . {based on the image signal}
  - 23/6812 . . . . {based on additional sensors, e.g. acceleration sensors}
  - 23/6815 . . . . {by distinguishing pan or tilt from motion}
  - 23/682 . . . {Vibration or motion blur correction}
  - 23/683 . . . . {performed by a processor, e.g. controlling the readout of an image memory}
  - 23/684 . . . . {performed by controlling the image sensor readout, e.g. by controlling the integration time}
  - 23/6842 . . . . . {by controlling the scanning position, e.g. windowing}
  - 23/6845 . . . . . {by combination of a plurality of images sequentially taken}
  - 23/685 . . . . . {performed by mechanical compensation}
  - 23/686 . . . . . {with a variable apex prism}
  - 23/687 . . . . . {by shifting the lens or sensor position}
  - 23/689 . . . {Motion occurring during a rolling shutter mode}
  - 23/69 . . Control of means for changing angle of the field of view, e.g. optical zoom objectives or electronic zooming
  - 23/695 . . Control of camera direction for changing a field of view, e.g. pan, tilt or based on tracking of objects
  - 23/698 . . for achieving an enlarged field of view, e.g. panoramic image capture
  - 23/70 . . Circuitry for compensating brightness variation in the scene
  - 23/71 . . Circuitry for evaluating the brightness variation
  - 23/72 . . Combination of two or more compensation controls
  - 23/73 . . by influencing the exposure time
  - 23/74 . . by influencing the scene brightness using illuminating means
  - 23/741 . . by increasing the dynamic range of the image compared to the dynamic range of the electronic image sensors
  - 23/743 . . Bracketing, i.e. taking a series of images with varying exposure conditions
  - 23/745 . . Detection of flicker frequency or suppression of flicker wherein the flicker is caused by illumination, e.g. due to fluorescent tube illumination or pulsed LED illumination
  - 23/749 . . {by influencing the pick-up tube voltages}
  - 23/75 . . by influencing optical camera components
  - 23/76 . . by influencing the image signals
  - 23/80 . . Camera processing pipelines; Components thereof
- WARNING**
- Group [H04N 23/80](#) is impacted by reclassification into groups [H04N 23/90](#), [H04N 23/95](#), [H04N 23/951](#), [H04N 23/955](#), [H04N 23/957](#), [H04N 23/958](#) and [H04N 23/959](#).
- All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.
- 23/81 . . for suppressing or minimising disturbance in the image signal generation
  - 23/811 . . . {by dust removal, e.g. from surfaces of the image sensor or processing of the image signal output by the electronic image sensor}
  - 23/815 . . {for controlling the resolution by using a single image}
  - 23/82 . . for controlling camera response irrespective of the scene brightness, e.g. gamma correction
- WARNING**
- Group [H04N 23/82](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 5/202](#).
- Groups [H04N 5/202](#) and [H04N 23/82](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.
- 23/83 . . . specially adapted for colour signals
- WARNING**
- Group [H04N 23/83](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 9/69](#).
- Groups [H04N 9/69](#) and [H04N 23/83](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.
- 23/84 . . for processing colour signals
- WARNING**
- Group [H04N 23/84](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 9/64](#).
- Groups [H04N 9/64](#) and [H04N 23/84](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.
- 23/841 . . . {to modify gamut}
  - 23/843 . . . {Demosaicing, e.g. interpolating colour pixel values}

- 23/85 . . . for matrixing

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 23/85](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 9/67](#).

Groups [H04N 9/67](#) and [H04N 23/85](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 23/86 . . . for controlling the colour saturation of colour signals, e.g. automatic chroma control circuits

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 23/86](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 9/68](#).

Groups [H04N 9/68](#) and [H04N 23/86](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 23/87 . . . for reinsertion of DC or slowly varying components of colour signals

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 23/87](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 9/72](#).

Groups [H04N 9/72](#) and [H04N 23/87](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 23/88 . . . for colour balance, e.g. white-balance circuits or colour temperature control

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 23/88](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 9/73](#).

Groups [H04N 9/73](#) and [H04N 23/88](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 23/90 . Arrangement of cameras or camera modules, e.g. multiple cameras in TV studios or sports stadiums

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 23/90](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 23/80](#).

Groups [H04N 23/80](#) and [H04N 23/90](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 23/95 . Computational photography systems, e.g. light-field imaging systems

**WARNING**

Groups [H04N 23/95](#), [H04N 23/955](#) and [H04N 23/958](#) are incomplete pending reclassification of documents from groups [H04N 23/00](#) and [H04N 23/80](#).

All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 23/951 . . by using two or more images to influence resolution, frame rate or aspect ratio

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 23/951](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 23/80](#).

Groups [H04N 23/80](#) and [H04N 23/951](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 23/955 . . for lensless imaging

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 23/955](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 23/00](#).

Groups [H04N 23/00](#) and [H04N 23/955](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 23/957 . . Light-field or plenoptic cameras or camera modules

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 23/957](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 23/80](#).

Groups [H04N 23/80](#) and [H04N 23/957](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 23/958 . . for extended depth of field imaging

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 23/958](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 23/00](#).

Groups [H04N 23/00](#) and [H04N 23/958](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 23/959 . . . by adjusting depth of field during image capture, e.g. maximising or setting range based on scene characteristics

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 23/959](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 23/80](#).

Groups [H04N 23/80](#) and [H04N 23/959](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.



## 25/00 Circuitry of solid-state image sensors [SSIS]; Control thereof

### WARNINGS

1. Group [H04N 25/00](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 5/30](#).  
Groups [H04N 5/30](#) and [H04N 25/00](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.
2. Groups [H04N 25/00](#), [H04N 25/10](#), [H04N 25/11](#), [H04N 25/13](#), [H04N 25/131](#), [H04N 25/133](#), [H04N 25/134](#), [H04N 25/135](#), [H04N 25/136](#), [H04N 25/17](#), [H04N 25/20](#), [H04N 25/21](#), [H04N 25/30](#), [H04N 25/70](#), [H04N 25/702](#), [H04N 25/703](#), [H04N 25/704](#), [H04N 25/705](#), [H04N 25/706](#), [H04N 25/707](#), [H04N 25/708](#), [H04N 25/709](#) and [H04N 25/79](#) are incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 3/15](#).

All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/10 . . for transforming different wavelengths into image signals

### WARNING

Groups [H04N 25/10](#) and [H04N 25/17](#) are incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 23/10](#).

Groups [H04N 23/10](#), [H04N 25/10](#) and [H04N 25/17](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/11 . . . Arrangement of colour filter arrays [CFA]; Filter mosaics
- 25/13 . . . characterised by the spectral characteristics of the filter elements
- 25/131 . . . . including elements passing infrared wavelengths

### WARNING

Group [H04N 25/131](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 23/11](#).

Groups [H04N 23/11](#) and [H04N 25/131](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/133 . . . . including elements passing panchromatic light, e.g. filters passing white light
- 25/134 . . . . {based on three different wavelength filter elements}
- 25/135 . . . . {based on four or more different wavelength filter elements}
- 25/136 . . . . . {using complementary colours}
- 25/17 . . Colour separation based on photon absorption depth, e.g. full colour resolution obtained simultaneously at each pixel location

- 25/20 . . for transforming only infrared radiation into image signals

### WARNING

Groups [H04N 25/20](#) and [H04N 25/21](#) are incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 5/33](#).

Groups [H04N 5/33](#), [H04N 25/20](#) and [H04N 25/21](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/21 . . . for transforming thermal infrared radiation into image signals

- 25/30 . . for transforming X-rays into image signals

### WARNING

Group [H04N 25/30](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 5/32](#).

Groups [H04N 5/32](#) and [H04N 25/30](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/40 . . Extracting pixel data from image sensors by controlling scanning circuits, e.g. by modifying the number of pixels sampled or to be sampled

### WARNINGS

1. Group [H04N 25/40](#) is impacted by reclassification into group [H04N 25/47](#).  
Groups [H04N 25/40](#) and [H04N 25/47](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.
2. Groups [H04N 25/40](#), [H04N 25/41](#), [H04N 25/42](#), [H04N 25/44](#), [H04N 25/441](#), [H04N 25/443](#), [H04N 25/445](#), [H04N 25/447](#) and [H04N 25/46](#) are incomplete pending reclassification of documents from groups [H04N 3/155](#) and [H04N 3/1562](#).

All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/41 . . {Extracting pixel data from a plurality of image sensors simultaneously picking up an image, e.g. for increasing the field of view by combining the outputs of a plurality of sensors}

- 25/42 . . . by switching between different modes of operation using different resolutions or aspect ratios, e.g. switching between interlaced and non-interlaced mode

- 25/44 . . . by partially reading an SSIS array

- 25/441 . . . . by reading contiguous pixels from selected rows or columns of the array, e.g. interlaced scanning

- 25/443 . . . . by reading pixels from selected 2D regions of the array, e.g. for windowing or digital zooming

- 25/445 . . . . by skipping some contiguous pixels within the read portion of the array

- 25/447 . . . . by preserving the colour pattern with or without loss of information

- 25/46 . . . by combining or binning pixels

- 25/47 . Image sensors with pixel address output; Event-driven image sensors; Selection of pixels to be read out based on image data
- WARNING**
- Group [H04N 25/47](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from groups [H04N 3/155](#) and [H04N 25/40](#).
- Groups [H04N 3/155](#), [H04N 25/40](#) and [H04N 25/47](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.
- 25/48 . Increasing resolution by shifting the sensor relative to the scene
- WARNING**
- Group [H04N 25/48](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 3/155](#).
- Groups [H04N 3/155](#) and [H04N 25/48](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.
- 25/50 . Control of the SSIS exposure
- WARNINGS**
1. Group [H04N 25/50](#) is impacted by reclassification into group [H04N 25/51](#).  
Groups [H04N 25/50](#) and [H04N 25/51](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.
  2. Groups [H04N 25/50](#), [H04N 25/51](#), [H04N 25/53](#), [H04N 25/531](#), [H04N 25/532](#), [H04N 25/533](#), [H04N 25/534](#), [H04N 25/535](#), [H04N 25/57](#), [H04N 25/571](#), [H04N 25/573](#), [H04N 25/575](#), [H04N 25/58](#), [H04N 25/581](#), [H04N 25/583](#), [H04N 25/585](#), [H04N 25/587](#), [H04N 25/589](#) and [H04N 25/59](#) are incomplete pending reclassification of documents from groups [H04N 3/155](#) and [H04N 3/1556](#).  
All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.
- 25/51 . . Control of the gain
- WARNING**
- Group [H04N 25/51](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 25/50](#).
- Groups [H04N 25/50](#) and [H04N 25/51](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.
- 25/53 . . Control of the integration time
- WARNING**
- Group [H04N 25/53](#) is impacted by reclassification into group [H04N 25/532](#).
- Groups [H04N 25/53](#) and [H04N 25/532](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.
- 25/531 . . . by controlling rolling shutters in CMOS SSIS
- 25/532 . . . by controlling global shutters in CMOS SSIS
- WARNING**
- Group [H04N 25/532](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 25/53](#).
- Groups [H04N 25/53](#) and [H04N 25/532](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.
- 25/533 . . . by using differing integration times for different sensor regions
- WARNING**
- Group [H04N 25/533](#) is impacted by reclassification into group [H04N 25/535](#).
- Groups [H04N 25/533](#) and [H04N 25/535](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.
- 25/534 . . . . depending on the spectral component
- 25/535 . . . . by dynamic region selection
- WARNING**
- Group [H04N 25/535](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 25/533](#).
- Groups [H04N 25/533](#) and [H04N 25/535](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.
- 25/57 . . Control of the dynamic range
- 25/571 . . . involving a non-linear response
- 25/573 . . . . {the logarithmic type}
- 25/575 . . . . {with a response composed of multiple slopes}
- 25/58 . . . involving two or more exposures
- 25/581 . . . . acquired simultaneously
- 25/583 . . . . . with different integration times
- 25/585 . . . . . with pixels having different sensitivities within the sensor, e.g. fast or slow pixels or pixels having different sizes
- 25/587 . . . . acquired sequentially, e.g. using the combination of odd and even image fields
- 25/589 . . . . . with different integration times, e.g. short and long exposures
- 25/59 . . . by controlling the amount of charge storable in the pixel, e.g. modification of the charge conversion ratio of the floating node capacitance

- 25/60 . . Noise processing, e.g. detecting, correcting, reducing or removing noise

#### **WARNINGS**

1. Group [H04N 25/60](#) is impacted by reclassification into groups [H04N 25/61](#) - [H04N 25/69](#).

All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

2. Groups [H04N 25/60](#) - [H04N 25/69](#) are incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 3/1568](#).

All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/61 . . the noise originating only from the lens unit, e.g. flare, shading, vignetting or "cos4"

#### **WARNING**

Groups [H04N 25/61](#), [H04N 25/611](#), [H04N 25/615](#) and [H04N 25/6153](#) are incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 25/60](#).

All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/611 . . . Correction of chromatic aberration  
25/615 . . . involving a transfer function modelling the optical system, e.g. optical transfer function [OTF], phase transfer function [PhTF] or modulation transfer function [MTF]  
25/6153 . . . . {for colour signals}  
25/616 . . involving a correlated sampling function, e.g. correlated double sampling [CDS] or triple sampling

#### **WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/616](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 25/60](#).

Groups [H04N 25/60](#) and [H04N 25/616](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/617 . . for reducing electromagnetic interference, e.g. clocking noise

#### **WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/617](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 25/60](#).

Groups [H04N 25/60](#) and [H04N 25/617](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/618 . . for random or high-frequency noise

#### **WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/618](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 25/60](#).

Groups [H04N 25/60](#) and [H04N 25/618](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/62 . . Detection or reduction of noise due to excess charges produced by the exposure, e.g. smear, blooming, ghost image, crosstalk or leakage between pixels

#### **WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/62](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 25/60](#).

Group [H04N 25/62](#) is also impacted by reclassification into groups [H04N 25/621](#), [H04N 25/622](#), [H04N 25/623](#), [H04N 25/625](#), [H04N 25/626](#), [H04N 25/627](#) and [H04N 25/628](#).

All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/621 . . . for the control of blooming

#### **WARNING**

Groups [H04N 25/621](#), [H04N 25/622](#) and [H04N 25/623](#) are incomplete pending reclassification of documents from groups [H04N 25/60](#) and [H04N 25/62](#).

All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/622 . . . . {by controlling anti-blooming drains}  
25/623 . . . . {by evacuation via the output or reset lines}  
25/625 . . . for the control of smear

#### **WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/625](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from groups [H04N 25/60](#) and [H04N 25/62](#).

Groups [H04N 25/60](#), [H04N 25/62](#) and [H04N 25/625](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/626 . . . Reduction of noise due to residual charges remaining after image readout, e.g. to remove ghost images or afterimages

#### **WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/626](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from groups [H04N 25/60](#) and [H04N 25/62](#).

Groups [H04N 25/60](#), [H04N 25/62](#) and [H04N 25/626](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/627 . . . Detection or reduction of inverted contrast or eclipsing effects

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/627](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from groups [H04N 25/60](#) and [H04N 25/62](#).

Groups [H04N 25/60](#), [H04N 25/62](#) and [H04N 25/627](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/628 . . . for reducing horizontal stripes caused by saturated regions of CMOS sensors

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/628](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from groups [H04N 25/60](#) and [H04N 25/62](#).

Groups [H04N 25/60](#), [H04N 25/62](#) and [H04N 25/628](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/63 . . . applied to dark current

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/63](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 25/60](#).

Group [H04N 25/63](#) is also impacted by reclassification into groups [H04N 25/633](#), [H04N 25/67](#), [H04N 25/671](#), [H04N 25/672](#), [H04N 25/673](#), [H04N 25/674](#), [H04N 25/677](#), [H04N 25/68](#) and [H04N 25/683](#).

All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/633 . . . by using optical black pixels

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/633](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from groups [H04N 25/60](#) and [H04N 25/63](#).

Groups [H04N 25/60](#), [H04N 25/63](#) and [H04N 25/633](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/65 . . . applied to reset noise, e.g. KTC noise related to CMOS structures by techniques other than CDS

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/65](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 25/60](#).

Groups [H04N 25/60](#) and [H04N 25/65](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/67 . . . applied to fixed-pattern noise, e.g. non-uniformity of response

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/67](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from groups [H04N 25/60](#) and [H04N 25/63](#).

Group [H04N 25/67](#) is also impacted by reclassification into groups [H04N 25/671](#), [H04N 25/672](#), [H04N 25/673](#), [H04N 25/674](#), [H04N 25/677](#), [H04N 25/68](#) and [H04N 25/683](#).

All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/671 . . . for non-uniformity detection or correction

**WARNING**

Groups [H04N 25/671](#), [H04N 25/672](#), [H04N 25/673](#), [H04N 25/674](#) and [H04N 25/677](#) are incomplete pending reclassification of documents from groups [H04N 25/60](#), [H04N 25/63](#) and [H04N 25/67](#).

All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/672 . . . . between adjacent sensors or output registers for reading a single image

- 25/673 . . . . by using reference sources

- 25/674 . . . . based on the scene itself, e.g. defocusing

- 25/677 . . . . for reducing the column or line fixed pattern noise

- 25/68 . . . applied to defects

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/68](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from groups [H04N 25/60](#), [H04N 25/63](#) and [H04N 25/67](#).

Group [H04N 25/68](#) is also impacted by reclassification into group [H04N 25/69](#).

All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/683 . . . by defect estimation performed on the scene signal, e.g. real time or on the fly detection

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/683](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from groups [H04N 25/60](#), [H04N 25/63](#) and [H04N 25/67](#).

All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/69 . . . SSIS comprising testing or correcting structures for circuits other than pixel cells

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/69](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from groups [H04N 25/60](#) and [H04N 25/68](#).

Groups [H04N 25/60](#), [H04N 25/68](#) and [H04N 25/69](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.



- 25/70 . SSIS architectures; Circuits associated therewith  
 25/701 . . Line sensors

**WARNING**

Groups [H04N 25/701](#) and [H04N 25/7013](#) are incomplete pending reclassification of documents from groups [H04N 3/15](#) and [H04N 3/1581](#).

Groups [H04N 3/15](#), [H04N 3/1581](#), [H04N 25/701](#) and [H04N 25/7013](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/7013 . . . {using abutted sensors forming a long line}  
 25/702 . . SSIS architectures characterised by non-identical, non-equidistant or non-planar pixel layout

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/702](#) is impacted by reclassification into groups [H04N 25/703](#), [H04N 25/706](#), [H04N 25/707](#) and [H04N 25/708](#).

All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/703 . . SSIS architectures incorporating pixels for producing signals other than image signals

**WARNING**

Groups [H04N 25/703](#), [H04N 25/706](#), [H04N 25/707](#) and [H04N 25/708](#) are incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 25/702](#).

All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/704 . . . Pixels specially adapted for focusing, e.g. phase difference pixel sets  
 25/705 . . . Pixels for depth measurement, e.g. RGBZ  
 25/706 . . . Pixels for exposure or ambient light measuring  
 25/707 . . . Pixels for event detection  
 25/708 . . . Pixels for edge detection  
 25/709 . . Circuitry for control of the power supply  
 25/71 . . Charge-coupled device [CCD] sensors; Charge-transfer registers specially adapted for CCD sensors

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/71](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 3/1525](#).

Groups [H04N 3/1525](#) and [H04N 25/71](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/711 . . . Time delay and integration [TDI] registers; TDI shift registers

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/711](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 3/1525](#).

Groups [H04N 3/1525](#) and [H04N 25/711](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/713 . . . Transfer or readout registers; Split readout registers or multiple readout registers

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/713](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from groups [H04N 3/1525](#) and [H04N 3/1575](#).

Groups [H04N 3/1525](#), [H04N 3/1575](#) and [H04N 25/713](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/715 . . . using frame interline transfer [FIT]  
 25/72 . . . using frame transfer [FT]  
 25/73 . . . using interline transfer [IT]  
 25/74 . . . Circuitry for scanning or addressing the pixel array

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/74](#) is impacted by reclassification into group [H04N 25/779](#).

Groups [H04N 25/74](#) and [H04N 25/779](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/745 . . . {Circuitry for generating timing or clock signals}

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/745](#) is impacted by reclassification into group [H04N 25/7795](#).

Groups [H04N 25/745](#) and [H04N 25/7795](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/75 . . . Circuitry for providing, modifying or processing image signals from the pixel array

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/75](#) is impacted by reclassification into group [H04N 25/78](#).

Groups [H04N 25/75](#) and [H04N 25/78](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/76 . . Addressed sensors, e.g. MOS or CMOS sensors

**WARNING**

Groups [H04N 25/76](#), [H04N 25/766](#), [H04N 25/767](#), [H04N 25/768](#), [H04N 25/77](#), [H04N 25/771](#), [H04N 25/772](#), [H04N 25/773](#), [H04N 25/778](#), [H04N 25/779](#), [H04N 25/7795](#) and [H04N 25/78](#) are incomplete pending reclassification of documents from groups [H04N 3/1506](#) and [H04N 3/1512](#).

All groups listed in this Warning should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/766 . . . comprising control or output lines used for a plurality of functions, e.g. for pixel output, driving, reset or power

- 25/767 . . . Horizontal readout lines, multiplexers or registers

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/767](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 3/1575](#).

Groups [H04N 3/1575](#) and [H04N 25/767](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/768 . . . for time delay and integration [TDI]

- 25/77 . . . Pixel circuitry, e.g. memories, A/D converters, pixel amplifiers, shared circuits or shared components

- 25/771 . . . . comprising storage means other than floating diffusion

- 25/772 . . . . comprising A/D, V/T, V/F, I/T or I/F converters

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/772](#) is impacted by reclassification into group [H04N 25/773](#).

Groups [H04N 25/772](#) and [H04N 25/773](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/773 . . . . . comprising photon counting circuits, e.g. single photon detection [SPD] or single photon avalanche diodes [SPAD]

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/773](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 25/772](#).

Groups [H04N 25/772](#) and [H04N 25/773](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/778 . . . . . comprising amplifiers shared between a plurality of pixels, i.e. at least one part of the amplifier must be on the sensor array itself

- 25/779 . . . . Circuitry for scanning or addressing the pixel array

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/779](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 25/74](#).

Groups [H04N 25/74](#) and [H04N 25/779](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/7795 . . . . {Circuitry for generating timing or clock signals}

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/7795](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 25/745](#).

Groups [H04N 25/745](#) and [H04N 25/7795](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/78 . . . . Readout circuits for addressed sensors, e.g. output amplifiers or A/D converters

**WARNING**

Group [H04N 25/78](#) is incomplete pending reclassification of documents from group [H04N 25/75](#).

Groups [H04N 25/75](#) and [H04N 25/78](#) should be considered in order to perform a complete search.

- 25/79 . . Arrangements of circuitry being divided between different or multiple substrates, chips or circuit boards, e.g. stacked image sensors

**2101/00 Still video cameras****2201/00 Indexing scheme relating to scanning, transmission or reproduction of documents or the like, and to details thereof**

- 2201/0001 . . Diagnosis, testing or measuring; Detecting, analysis or monitoring not otherwise provided for

- 2201/0003 . . Method used

- 2201/0005 . . . using a reference pattern designed for the purpose, e.g. a test chart

- 2201/0006 . . . . details of the reference pattern (DM 1105)

- 2201/0008 . . Connection or combination of a still picture apparatus with another apparatus

- 2201/001 . . Sharing resources, e.g. processing power or memory, with a connected apparatus or enhancing the capability of the still picture apparatus

**NOTE**

Subgroups [H04N 2201/001](#) - [H04N 2201/0075](#) are for use with subgroups [H04N 1/00127](#) - [H04N 1/00347](#)

- 2201/0012 . . . Use of shared folders, i.e. folders or directories accessible by all connected apparatus

- 2201/0013 . . Arrangements for the control of the connected apparatus by the still picture apparatus

- 2201/0015 . . Control of image communication with the connected apparatus, e.g. signalling capability

- 2201/0017 . . . Notifying a communication result

- 2201/0018 . . . . via a non-image communication channel, e.g. via a computer network
  - 2201/002 . . . . Selecting or switching between an image communication channel and a non-image communication channel
  - 2201/0022 . . . . Selecting or switching between an image communication mode and a non-image communication mode ([H04N 2201/002 takes precedence](#))
  - 2201/0024 . . . . Converting image communication control signals, e.g. group 3 facsimile protocol signals, to non-image communication control signals or *vice versa*
  - 2201/0025 . . . . Adapting an image communication to a non-image communication or *vice versa*, e.g. data rate-conversion
  - 2201/0027 . . . . Adapting to communicate with plural different types of apparatus
  - 2201/0029 . . . . Avoiding duplicate transfer of image data
  - 2201/0031 . . . . where the still picture apparatus acts as the master
  - 2201/0032 . . . . where the still picture apparatus acts as the slave
  - 2201/0034 . . . . Details of the connection, e.g. connector, interface
  - 2201/0036 . . . . Detecting or checking connection
  - 2201/0037 . . . . Topological details of the connection
  - 2201/0039 . . . . . Connection via a network
  - 2201/0041 . . . . . Point to point ([H04N 2201/0039 takes precedence](#))
  - 2201/0043 . . . . . Point to multipoint ([H04N 2201/0039 takes precedence](#))
  - 2201/0044 . . . . Connecting to a plurality of different apparatus; Using a plurality of different connectors
  - 2201/0046 . . . . Software interface details, e.g. interaction of operating systems
  - 2201/0048 . . . . Type of connection
  - 2201/0049 . . . . . By wire, cable or the like
  - 2201/0051 . . . . . Card-type connector, e.g. PCMCIA card interface
  - 2201/0053 . . . . . Optical, e.g. using an infrared link
  - 2201/0055 . . . . . By radio
  - 2201/0056 . . . . . Using mechanical couplings, e.g. mating elements ([H04N 2201/0049](#), [H04N 2201/0051](#), [H04N 2201/0058 take precedence](#))
  - 2201/0058 . . . . . Docking-station, cradle or the like
  - 2201/006 . . . . . Using near field communication, e.g. an inductive loop
  - 2201/0062 . . . . Stand-alone interface device
  - 2201/0063 . . . . Constructional details
  - 2201/0065 . . . . Converting image data to a format usable by the connected apparatus or *vice versa*
  - 2201/0067 . . . . Converting to still picture data
  - 2201/0068 . . . . Converting from still picture data
  - 2201/007 . . . . Selecting or switching between a still picture apparatus or function and another apparatus or function ([H04N 2201/0022 takes precedence](#))
  - 2201/0072 . . . . Detecting the status of a connected apparatus
  - 2201/0074 . . . . Arrangements for the control of a still picture apparatus by the connected apparatus
  - 2201/0075 . . . . by a user operated remote control device, e.g. receiving instructions from a user via a computer terminal or mobile telephone handset
  - 2201/0077 . . . . Types of the still picture apparatus
- NOTE**
- Subgroups [H04N 2201/0077](#) - [H04N 2201/0094](#) are for use with [H04N 1/00](#) and subgroups
- 2201/0079 . . . . Medical imaging device
  - 2201/0081 . . . . Image reader ([H04N 2201/0091](#) - [H04N 2201/0094 take precedence](#))
  - 2201/0082 . . . . Image hardcopy reproducer ([H04N 2201/0091](#) - [H04N 2201/0094 take precedence](#))
  - 2201/0084 . . . . Digital still camera
  - 2201/0086 . . . . Image transceiver ([H04N 2201/0093](#) and [H04N 2201/0094 take precedence](#))
  - 2201/0087 . . . . Image storage device
  - 2201/0089 . . . . Image display device
  - 2201/0091 . . . . Digital copier; digital 'photocopier' ([H04N 2201/0093](#) and [H04N 2201/0094 take precedence](#))
  - 2201/0093 . . . . Facsimile machine ([H04N 2201/0094 takes precedence](#))
  - 2201/0094 . . . . Multifunctional device, i.e. a device capable of all of reading, reproducing, copying, facsimile transception, file transception
  - 2201/0096 . . . . Portable devices
  - 2201/0098 . . . . User intervention not otherwise provided for, e.g. placing documents, responding to an alarm
  - 2201/024 . . . . deleted
  - 2201/02402 . . . . Arrangements for positioning heads, e.g. with respect to other elements of the apparatus
- NOTE**
- Subgroups [H04N 2201/02402](#) - [H04N 2201/02404](#) and [H04N 2201/02487](#) - [H04N 2201/02497](#) are for use with subgroups [H04N 1/024](#) - [H04N 1/0318](#)
- 2201/02404 . . . . Arrangements for mounting or supporting heads ([H04N 2201/02402 takes precedence](#))
  - 2201/02406 . . . . Arrangements for positioning elements within a head ([H04N 1/02409 takes precedence](#); [arrangements for positioning heads H04N 2201/02402](#))
  - 2201/02408 . . . . Translational positioning
  - 2201/0241 . . . . . in a direction parallel to the main-scanning direction
  - 2201/02412 . . . . . in a direction parallel to the sub-scanning direction
  - 2201/02414 . . . . . in a direction perpendicular to the plane of the photodetector elements, e.g. in the direction of the optical axis ([H04N 1/02409 takes precedence](#))
  - 2201/02416 . . . . Rotational positioning, i.e. with respect to an axis
  - 2201/02418 . . . . . Rotation about the optical axis
  - 2201/0242 . . . . . Rotation about an axis in the plane of the scanning elements orthogonal to the optical axis, the axis of rotation extending in the main-scanning direction, e.g. the longitudinal axis of a linear array

2201/02422	. . . .	Rotation about an axis in the plane of the scanning elements orthogonal to the optical axis, the axis of rotation extending in the sub-scanning direction, e.g. the transverse axis of a linear array
2201/02425	. . .	Self-adjusting arrangements, e.g. compensating for temperature fluctuations
2201/02427	. . .	Element positioned
2201/02429	. . . .	Photodetector element, e.g. CCD array
2201/02431	. . . .	Lens or optical system
2201/02433	. . . .	Reflective element, e.g. mirror
2201/02435	. . . .	Illuminating means
2201/02437	. . . .	Transparent cover
2201/02439	. . .	Positioning method
2201/02441	. . . .	using screws
2201/02443	. . . .	using adhesive
2201/02445	. . . .	using clips or the like
2201/02447	. . . .	using elastic means, e.g. springs ( <a href="#">H04N 2201/02445</a> takes precedence)
2201/02449	. . . .	using a reference element, e.g. a stop
2201/02452	. .	Arrangements for mounting or supporting elements within a scanning head ( <a href="#">H04N 2201/02406</a> , <a href="#">H04N 2201/03154</a> take precedence)
2201/02454	. . .	Element mounted or supported
2201/02456	. . . .	Scanning element, e.g. CCD array, photodetector
2201/02458	. . . .	Lens or optical system
2201/0246	. . . .	Mirror, reflecting element or beam splitter
2201/02462	. . . .	Illuminating means
2201/02464	. . . .	Transparent cover or window
2201/02466	. . .	Mounting or supporting method
2201/02468	. . . .	using screws
2201/0247	. . . .	using adhesive
2201/02472	. . . .	using clips
2201/02474	. . . .	Clasping; Clamping ( <a href="#">H04N 2201/02472</a> takes precedence)
2201/02477	. . . .	using elastic means, e.g. springs ( <a href="#">H04N 2201/02472</a> takes precedence)
2201/02479	. . .	Mounting or supporting means
2201/02481	. . . .	Single piece support, e.g. molded plastic support
2201/02483	. . . .	Housing or part of the housing, e.g. bottom plate ( <a href="#">H04N 2201/02481</a> takes precedence)
2201/02485	. . . .	Dedicated element, e.g. bracket or arm
2201/02487	. .	Manufacturing details ( <a href="#">H04N 2201/02406</a> , <a href="#">H04N 2201/02452</a> take precedence)
2201/02489	. .	Arrangements for allowing access to the scanning head, e.g. for service or repair
2201/02491	. .	Arrangements for reducing the effects of vibrations
2201/02493	. .	Additional optical elements not otherwise provided for, e.g. filters, polarising plates, masks or apertures
2201/02495	. .	Constructional details not otherwise provided for, e.g. for ease of assembly, allowing access to the scanning elements, integrated reinforcing members
2201/02497	. .	Additional elements, e.g. sheet guide plates, light shields ( <a href="#">H04N 2201/02489</a> - <a href="#">H04N 2201/02495</a> take precedence)
2201/028	. .	for picture information pick-up
2201/03	. . .	deleted
2201/031	. . . .	deleted
2201/03104	. . . . .	Integral pick-up heads, i.e. self-contained heads whose basic elements are a light source, a lens and a photodetector supported by a single-piece frame
2201/03108	. . . . .	Components of integral heads
2201/03112	. . . . .	Light source
2201/03116	. . . . .	Light source lens
2201/0312	. . . . .	Reflecting element upstream of the scanned picture elements
2201/03125	. . . . .	Light guide upstream of the scanned picture elements
2201/03129	. . . . .	Transparent cover or transparent document support mounted on the head
2201/03133	. . . . .	Window, i.e. a transparent member mounted in the frame
2201/03137	. . . . .	Reflecting element downstream of the scanned picture elements
2201/03141	. . . . .	Photodetector lens
2201/03145	. . . . .	Photodetector
2201/0315	. . . . .	Details of integral heads not otherwise provided for
2201/03154	. . . . .	Additional internal supporting or reinforcing member
2201/03158	. . . . .	Heat radiator
2201/03162	. . . . .	Original guide plate
2201/03166	. . . . .	Additional light shielding member
2201/0317	. . . . .	Shape
2201/03175	. . . . .	Position
2201/03179	. . . . .	Frame
2201/03183	. . . . .	Material
2201/03187	. . . . .	Additional optical element
2201/03191	. . . . .	Adhesive element
2201/03195	. . . . .	Coating, e.g. light adsorbing layer
2201/04	. .	Scanning arrangements
2201/0402	. .	Arrangements not specific to a particular one of the scanning methods covered by groups <a href="#">H04N 1/04</a> - <a href="#">H04N 1/207</a>
2201/0404	. . .	Scanning transparent media, e.g. photographic film
<b>NOTE</b>		
Subgroups <a href="#">H04N 2201/0404</a> - <a href="#">H04N 2201/0468</a> are for use with subgroups <a href="#">H04N 1/04</a> - <a href="#">H04N 1/207</a>		
2201/0406	. . . .	Scanning slides
2201/0408	. . . .	Scanning film strips or rolls
2201/041	. . . .	Scanning microfilms or microfiches
2201/0412	. . . .	Scanning X-ray films
2201/0414	. . .	Scanning an image in a series of overlapping zones
2201/0416	. . .	Performing a pre-scan
2201/0418	. . .	capable of scanning transmissive and reflective originals at a single scanning station
2201/042	. . .	capable of using different scanning methods at a single scanning station
2201/0422	. . .	Media holders, covers, supports, backgrounds; Arrangements to facilitate placing of the medium ( <a href="#">H04N 2201/0406</a> - <a href="#">H04N 2201/0412</a> , <a href="#">H04N 2201/0434</a> take precedence)
2201/0424	. . .	Scanning non-straight lines



- 2201/0426 . . . Scanning an image in a series of contiguous zones
- 2201/0428 . . . Stabilising the scanning parts; Preventing vibrations
- 2201/043 . . . Viewing the scanned area
- 2201/0432 . . . Adjusting the orientation of the scanning elements relative to the scanned sheet, e.g. changing from longitudinal to lateral scanning
- 2201/0434 . . . specially adapted for scanning pages of a book
- 2201/0436 . . . Scanning a picture-bearing surface lying face up on a support ([H04N 2201/0434 takes precedence](#); using cylindrical picture bearing surfaces [H04N 1/06](#); with manual scanning [H04N 1/107](#))
- 2201/0438 . . . Scanning displays; Scanning large surfaces, e.g. projection screens, writing boards
- 2201/044 . . . Moving a scanning element into cooperation with a calibration element, e.g. a grey-wedge mounted on the document support, or vice versa
- 2201/0442 . . . Details of scanning carriage or moving picture-bearing surface support, e.g. bearing contact with guide rails
- 2201/0444 . . . for securing moveable scanning components, e.g. for transportation
- 2201/0446 . . . Constructional details not otherwise provided for, e.g. mounting of scanning components ([H04N 2201/0448 takes precedence](#))
- 2201/0448 . . . for positioning scanning elements not otherwise provided for; Aligning, e.g. using an alignment calibration pattern
- 2201/045 . . . Mounting the scanning elements in a collapsible or foldable structure, e.g. for ease of transportation
- 2201/0452 . . . Indicating the scanned area, e.g. by projecting light marks onto the medium
- 2201/0454 . . . for increasing the scanning speed
- 2201/0456 . . . for maintaining a predetermined distance between the scanning elements and the picture-bearing surface
- 2201/0458 . . . Additional arrangements for improving or optimising scanning resolution or quality
- 2201/046 . . . Actively compensating for disturbances, e.g. vibrations
- 2201/0462 . . . for reducing inactive scanning periods, e.g. increasing speed of carriage during return movement
- 2201/0464 . . . Self-propelled scanners, e.g. robotic scanners, means for propulsion integrated in the scanner carriage
- 2201/0466 . . . Selectively scanning in one or the other of two opposite directions, e.g. in the forward or the reverse direction
- 2201/0468 . . . Scanning in both of the two directions, e.g. during the forward and return movements
- 2201/047 . . . Detection, control or error compensation of scanning velocity or position
- 2201/04701 . . . Detection of scanning velocity or position
- 2201/04703 . . . using the scanning elements as detectors, e.g. by performing a prescan
- 2201/04705 . . . using inactive scanning elements, e.g. elements outside the scanning area
- 2201/04706 . . . which undergo the same scanning as the active elements in at least one direction
- 2201/04708 . . . which remain outside the scanned image area
- 2201/0471 . . . using dedicated detectors
- 2201/04712 . . . using unbroken arrays of detectors, i.e. detectors mounted on the same substrate
- 2201/04713 . . . Details of the detector arrangement, e.g. non-standard position, optical details ([H04N 2201/04712 takes precedence](#))
- 2201/04715 . . . by detecting marks or the like, e.g. slits
- 2201/04717 . . . on the scanned sheet, e.g. a reference sheet
- 2201/04718 . . . outside the image area
- 2201/0472 . . . on or adjacent the sheet support
- 2201/04722 . . . on a photoconductive drum or belt
- 2201/04724 . . . on a separate encoder wheel
- 2201/04725 . . . connected to the sub-scanning drive means
- 2201/04727 . . . on a linear encoder
- 2201/04729 . . . in the main-scan direction
- 2201/04731 . . . in the sub-scan direction
- 2201/04732 . . . Detecting at infrequent intervals, e.g. once or twice per line for main-scan control
- 2201/04734 . . . Detecting at frequent intervals, e.g. once per line for sub-scan control
- 2201/04736 . . . with varying intervals between consecutive detections
- 2201/04737 . . . by detecting the scanned medium directly, e.g. a leading edge
- 2201/04739 . . . by detecting the scanning head or scanning carriage
- 2201/04741 . . . by detecting the sheet support or the photoconductive surface directly
- 2201/04743 . . . by detecting the image directly
- 2201/04744 . . . by detecting the scanned beam or a reference beam
- 2201/04746 . . . after modulation by a grating, mask or the like
- 2201/04748 . . . by detecting synchronisation signals or driving signals, e.g. page sync
- 2201/04749 . . . Detecting position relative to a gradient, e.g. using triangular-shaped masks, marks or gratings
- 2201/04751 . . . Detecting position relative to a step, e.g. using L-shaped masks, marks or gratings
- 2201/04753 . . . Control or error compensation of scanning position or velocity
- 2201/04755 . . . by controlling the position or movement of a scanning element or carriage, e.g. of a polygonal mirror, of a drive motor
- 2201/04756 . . . by controlling the position or movement of the sheet, the sheet support or the photoconductive surface
- 2201/04758 . . . by controlling the position of the scanned image area ([H04N 2201/04755](#), [H04N 2201/04756 take precedence](#))
- 2201/0476 . . . using an optical, electro-optical or acousto-optical element
- 2201/04762 . . . using a reflecting element ([H04N 2201/04765 takes precedence](#))
- 2201/04763 . . . using a refracting element
- 2201/04765 . . . using a solid-state deflector, e.g. an acousto-optic deflector
- 2201/04767 . . . by controlling the timing of the signals, e.g. by controlling the frequency or phase of the pixel clock

2201/04768	. . . . .	Controlling the frequency of the signals	2201/3202	. . . .	of communication or activity log or report
2201/0477	. . . . .	using a clock signal composed from a number of clock signals of different frequencies	<b>NOTE</b>		
2201/04772	. . . . .	using a phase-locked loop	Subgroups		
2201/04774	. . . . .	using a reference clock or oscillator ( <a href="#">H04N 2201/04772</a> takes precedence)	<a href="#">H04N 2201/3202</a> - <a href="#">H04N 2201/3284</a>		
2201/04775	. . . . .	using a counter ( <a href="#">H04N 2201/04772</a> takes precedence)	are for use with subgroups		
2201/04777	. . . . .	using a voltage controlled oscillator ( <a href="#">H04N 2201/04772</a> takes precedence)	<a href="#">H04N 1/32101</a> - <a href="#">H04N 1/32352</a>		
2201/04779	. . . . .	using a clock signal composed from a number of clock signals of different phase	2201/3204	. . . .	of data relating to a user, sender, addressee, machine or electronic recording medium ( <a href="#">H04N 2201/3256</a> and subgroups take precedence)
2201/04781	. . . . .	Controlling the phase of the signals	2201/3205	. . . .	of identification information, e.g. name or ID code ( <a href="#">H04N 2201/3209</a> takes precedence)
2201/04782	. . . . .	using a clock signal composed from a number of clock signals of different frequencies	2201/3207	. . . .	of an address
2201/04784	. . . . .	using one or more clock signals selected from a number of clock signals of different phases	2201/3208	. . . .	of an e-mail or network address
2201/04786	. . . . .	Controlling a start time, e.g. for output of a line of data ( <a href="#">H04N 2201/04784</a> takes precedence)	2201/3209	. . . .	of a telephone number
2201/04787	. . . . .	by changing or controlling the addresses or values of pixels, e.g. in an array, in a memory, by interpolation	2201/3211	. . . .	of a company logo or the like
2201/04789	. . . .	in the main-scan direction	2201/3212	. . . .	of data relating to a job, e.g. communication, capture or filing of an image
2201/04791	. . . .	in the sub-scan direction	2201/3214	. . . .	of a date
2201/04793	. . . .	using stored control or compensation data, e.g. previously measured data	2201/3215	. . . .	of a time or duration
2201/04794	. . . .	Varying the control or compensation during the scan, e.g. using continuous feedback or from line to line	2201/3216	. . . .	of a job size, e.g. a number of images, pages or copies, size of file, length of message
2201/04796	. . . . .	Varying the sub-scan control during the main-scan, e.g. for correcting skew, tilt or bow of a scanning beam	2201/3218	. . . .	of a confirmation, acknowledgement or receipt
2201/04798	. . . . .	Varying the main-scan control during the main-scan, e.g. facet tracking	2201/3219	. . . .	of a job status, e.g. successful execution
2201/21	. .	Intermediate information storage	2201/3221	. . . .	of a job number or identification, e.g. communication number
2201/212	. .	Selecting different recording or reproducing modes, e.g. high or low resolution, field or frame	2201/3222	. . . .	of processing required or performed, e.g. forwarding, urgent or confidential handling
<b>NOTE</b>			2201/3223	. . . .	of type information, e.g. reception or copy job
Subgroups <a href="#">H04N 2201/212</a> - <a href="#">H04N 2201/218</a>			2201/3225	. . . .	of data relating to an image, a page or a document
are for use with subgroups			2201/3226	. . . .	of identification information or the like, e.g. ID code, index, title, part of an image, reduced-size image
<a href="#">H04N 1/21</a> - <a href="#">H04N 1/2195</a>			2201/3228	. . . . .	further additional information (metadata) being comprised in the identification information
2201/214	. .	Checking or indicating the storage space	2201/3229	. . . . .	further additional information (metadata) being comprised in the file name (including path, e.g. directory or folder names at one or more higher hierarchical levels)
2201/216	. .	Arrangements for recording on different types of storage medium, e.g. IC card or magnetic tape; Recording on a plurality of storage media	2201/323	. . . . .	for tracing or tracking, e.g. forensic tracing of unauthorized copies
2201/218	. .	Deletion of stored data; Preventing such deletion	2201/3232	. . . .	of a page, copy or picture number
2201/32	. .	Circuits or arrangements for control or supervision between transmitter and receiver or between image input and image output device, e.g. between a still-image camera and its memory or between a still-image camera and a printer device	2201/3233	. . . .	of authentication information, e.g. digital signature, watermark
2201/3201	. .	Display, printing, storage or transmission of additional information, e.g. ID code, date and time or title	2201/3235	. . . . .	Checking or certification of the authentication information, e.g. by comparison with data stored independently
			2201/3236	. . . . .	Details of authentication information generation
			2201/3238	. . . . .	using a coded or compressed version of the image data itself
			2201/3239	. . . . .	using a plurality of different authentication information
			2201/324	. . . . .	Selecting a particular authentication information from amongst a plurality of different authentication information

2201/3242	. . . .	of processing required or performed, e.g. for reproduction or before recording ( <a href="#">H04N 2201/3256 and subgroups take precedence</a> )
2201/3243	. . . .	of type information, e.g. handwritten or text document
2201/3245	. . . .	of image modifying data, e.g. handwritten addenda, highlights or augmented reality information
2201/3246	. . . .	of data relating to permitted access or usage, e.g. level of access or usage parameters for digital rights management [DRM] related to still images
2201/3247	. . . .	Data linking a set of images to one another, e.g. sequence, burst or continuous capture mode
2201/3249	. . . .	data relating to a linked page or object, e.g. hyperlink
2201/325	. . . .	Modified version of the image, e.g. part of the image, image reduced in size or resolution, thumbnail or screennail
2201/3251	. . . .	where the modified version of the image is relating to a person or face
2201/3252	. . . .	Image capture parameters, e.g. resolution, illumination conditions, orientation of the image capture device ( <a href="#">H04N 2201/3256 and subgroups take precedence</a> )
2201/3253	. . . .	Position information, e.g. geographical position at time of capture, GPS data
2201/3254	. . . .	Orientation, e.g. landscape or portrait; Location or order of the image data, e.g. in memory
2201/3256	. . . .	colour related metadata, e.g. colour, ICC profiles
2201/3257	. . . .	relating to the original, the input device or the input process, e.g. scanner profile
2201/3259	. . . .	relating to the image, page or document, e.g. intended colours
2201/326	. . . .	relating to the rendering or output medium, device or process, e.g. monitor, paper or printer profile
2201/3261	. . . .	of multimedia information, e.g. a sound signal
2201/3263	. . . .	of a graphical motif or symbol, e.g. Christmas symbol, logo ( <a href="#">H04N 2201/3211 takes precedence</a> )
2201/3264	. . . .	of sound signals
2201/3266	. . . .	of text or character information, e.g. text accompanying an image ( <a href="#">H04N 2201/3226 takes precedence</a> )
2201/3267	. . . .	of motion picture signals, e.g. video clip
2201/3269	. . . .	of machine readable codes or marks, e.g. bar codes or glyphs
2201/327	. . . .	which are undetectable to the naked eye, e.g. embedded codes
2201/3271	. . . .	Printing or stamping
2201/3273	. . . .	Display
2201/3274	. . . .	Storage or retrieval of prestored additional information
2201/3276	. . . .	of a customised additional information profile, e.g. a profile specific to a user ID
2201/3277	. . . .	The additional information being stored in the same storage device as the image data
2201/3278	. . . .	Transmission
2201/328	. . . .	Processing of the additional information
2201/3281	. . . .	Encryption; Ciphering
2201/3283	. . . .	Compression
2201/3284	. . . .	for error correction
2201/3285	. . . .	using picture signal storage, e.g. at transmitter
2201/3287	. . . .	Storage of at least one complete document page or image frame
<b>NOTE</b>		
Subgroups <a href="#">H04N 2201/3287</a> - <a href="#">H04N 2201/3298</a> are for use with subgroups <a href="#">H04N 1/32358</a> - <a href="#">H04N 1/32491</a>		
2201/3288	. . . .	Storage of two or more complete document pages or image frames
2201/329	. . . .	Storage of less than a complete document page or image frame
2201/3291	. . . .	of less than a complete line of data
2201/3292	. . . .	of one or two complete lines
2201/3294	. . . .	of several complete lines, e.g. a band of data
2201/3295	. . . .	Deletion of stored data; Preventing such deletion
2201/3297	. . . .	Simultaneous use of a single memory for different image storage purposes
2201/3298	. . . .	Checking or indicating the storage space
2201/333	. . . .	Mode signalling or mode changing; Handshaking therefor
2201/33307	. . . .	of a particular mode
<b>NOTE</b>		
Subgroups <a href="#">H04N 2201/33307</a> - <a href="#">H04N 2201/33392</a> are for use with subgroups <a href="#">H04N 1/333</a> - <a href="#">H04N 1/33392</a>		
2201/33314	. . . .	of reading or reproducing mode
2201/33321	. . . .	Image or page size, e.g. A3, A4
2201/33328	. . . .	Resolution
2201/33335	. . . .	Presentation, e.g. orientation, simplex, duplex
2201/33342	. . . .	of transmission mode
2201/3335	. . . .	Speed or rate
2201/33357	. . . .	Compression mode
2201/33364	. . . .	Type of modulation; Type of channel, e.g. digital or analog; Type of communication, e.g. half-duplex or full-duplex
2201/33371	. . . .	using test signals, e.g. checking error occurrences
2201/33378	. . . .	Type or format of data, e.g. colour or B/W, halftone or binary, computer image file or facsimile data
2201/33385	. . . .	Line- or page- scan or transmission time, e.g. minimum line-scan time
2201/33392	. . . .	Non-standard capability, e.g. relay, mail-box
<b>2209/00</b>	<b>Details of colour television systems</b>	
2209/04	. . . .	Picture signal generators
2209/041	. . . .	using solid-state devices
2209/042	. . . .	having a single pick-up sensor
2209/043	. . . .	using an alternating colour separation filter, e.g. colour wheel or colour LCD
2209/044	. . . .	using sequential colour illumination
2209/045	. . . .	using mosaic colour filter
2209/046	. . . .	Colour interpolation to calculate the missing colour values

- 2209/047 . . . . using multispectral pick-up elements
- 2209/048 . . . having several pick-up sensors
- 2209/049 . . . . having three pick-up sensors

**2213/00 Details of stereoscopic systems**

- 2213/001 . Constructional or mechanical details
- 2213/002 . Eyestrain reduction by processing stereoscopic signals or controlling stereoscopic devices
- 2213/003 . Aspects relating to the "2D+depth" image format
- 2213/005 . Aspects relating to the "3D+depth" image format
- 2213/006 . Pseudo-stereoscopic systems, i.e. systems wherein a stereoscopic effect is obtained without sending different images to the viewer's eyes
- 2213/007 . Aspects relating to detection of stereoscopic image format, e.g. for adaptation to the display format
- 2213/008 . Aspects relating to glasses for viewing stereoscopic images